



# CITROËN C3

HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

# Access to the Handbook online



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:  
<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.



Direct access to the **Basic Guide**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

# Welcome

Thank you for choosing Citroën C3.

This documents presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Complete Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on the use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the maintenance and warranty guide which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

## Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



<b>Driving</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Practical information</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Technical data</b>	<b>9</b>
Driving recommendations	118	Fuel tank	158	General points	201
Starting / Switching off the engine with the key	120	Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	159	Dimensions	204
Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting	122	Compatibility of fuels	160	Identification markings	205
Parking brake	125	Snow chains	161		
5-speed manual gearbox	125	Towing a trailer	162		
Automatic gearbox (EAT6)	126	Energy economy mode	163		
Gear shift indicator	129	Changing a wiper blade	164		
Hill start assist	130	Roof bars	164		
Stop & Start	131	Bonnet	165	<b>Audio and telematics</b>	■
Recognition of speed limit and advice signs	133	Engines	167	CITROËN Connect Nav	
Speed limiter	137	Checking levels	168	CITROËN Connect Radio	
Cruise control	139	Checks	170	Audio system Bluetooth	
Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake	142	AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)	172		
Fatigue detection system	145	Protections AIRBUMP®	175		
Lane Departure Warning System	147			<b>Alphabetical index</b>	■
Blind Spot Monitoring System	148	<b>In the event of a breakdown</b>	<b>8</b>		
Parking sensors	150	Running out of fuel (Diesel)	176		
Reversing camera	152	Temporary puncture repair kit	177		
Tyre under-inflation detection	153	Spare wheel	179		
CITROËN ConnectedCAM™	155	Changing a bulb	184		
		Changing a fuse	189		
		12 V battery	195		
		Towing	199		

## Driver's seat



<b>1</b>	Door mirrors Blind Spot Monitoring System Electric windows
<b>2</b>	Opening the bonnet
<b>3</b>	Dashboard fuses
<b>4</b>	Courtesy lamp Rear view mirror Emergency or assistance call CITROËN ConnectedCAM™
<b>5</b>	Touch screen Monochrome screen C Adjusting the date/time
<b>6</b>	Ventilation Heating Manual air conditioning Automatic air conditioning Front demisting / defrosting Rear screen demisting / defrosting

<b>7</b>	5-speed manual gearbox Automatic gearbox Gear shift indicator Hill start assist Stop & Start
<b>8</b>	Parking brake

## Instruments and controls (continued)

**1**

Lighting control stalk  
Direction indicators

**2**

Headlamp adjustment

**3**

Speed limiter  
Cruise control  
Speed limit recognition

**4**

Instrument panels  
Warnings and indicators  
Indicators  
Recorder, total distance

**5**

Steering wheel adjustment  
Audible warning to alert  
other road users to an imminent danger

**6**

Wiper control stalk  
Trip computer

**7**

Central locking  
Hazard warning lamps

**8**

Starting – Switching off the engine

## Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating changing up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

### Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.



## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit as soon as possible a CITROËN or a qualified workshop to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxide emissions compliant to the standard.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,800 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

## LCD Picto instrument panel



### Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Display screen.
3. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

### Control buttons

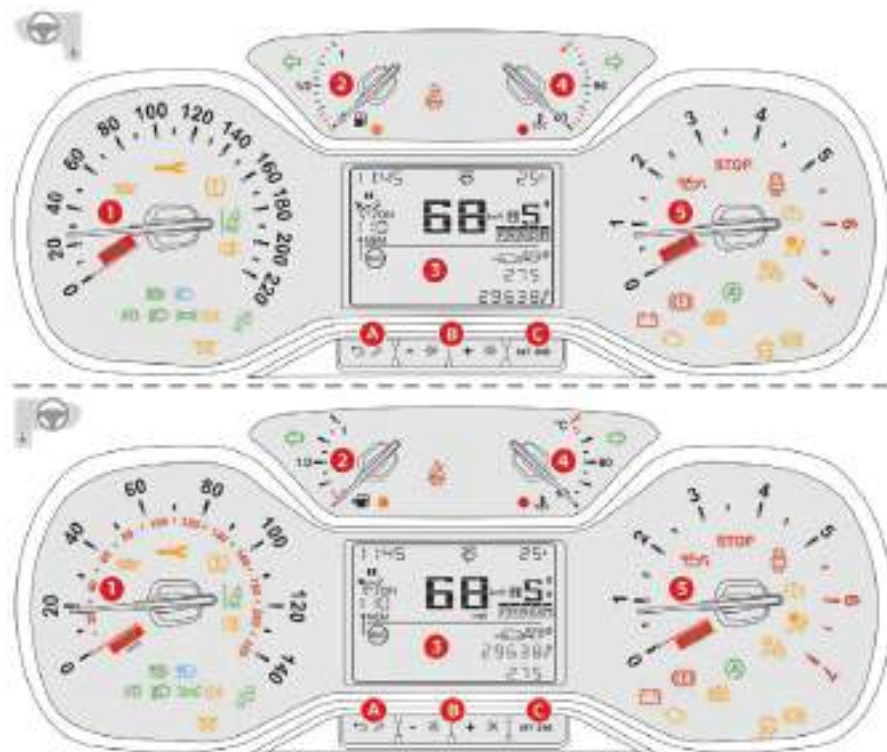
- A. General lighting dimmer.  
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- B. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Resetting of the selected function (maintenance indicator or trip distance recorder).  
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (long press), validation of a choice (short press).

## Display screen



1. External temperature.
2. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
3. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Gear shift and/or selector position indicator, shift and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox.
6. Fuel level.
7. Oil level indicator (appears a few seconds after switching on ignition, then disappears).
8. Service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km) then, trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Trip computer.
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km).

## LCD text instrument panel



## Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Display screen.
4. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

## Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator  
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.
- B. General lighting dimmer.  
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.  
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (long press), validation of a choice (short press).

## Display screen



If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can also configure some equipment by using this display.

For more information on **Configuring equipment for vehicles without a screen**, refer to the associated section.

1. External temperature.
2. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.  
Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear shift and/or selector position indicator, shift and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox.
5. Trip computer and time counter of the Stop & Start.
6. Display screen: trip distance recorder (miles or km), service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), total distance recorder, alert messages or functional status.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Visual identifiers informing the driver that a system is in operation, switched off (on/off indicator lights) or has developed a fault (warning lamp).

### When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lights come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lights should go off.

If they remain on, before driving refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

### Associated warnings

Certain warning lights may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

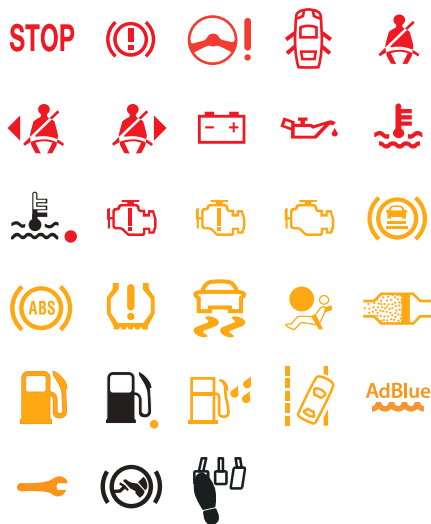
In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning light may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

## Warning lights

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the warning lights indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

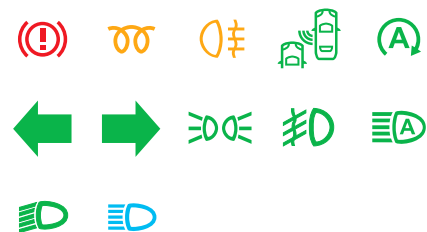
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.

If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Operation indicator lights

The lighting of one of the following warning lights confirms that the corresponding system is on.








## Deactivation indicator lamp






If this indicator lamp comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

This may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message being displayed.



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
<b>STOP</b>	<b>STOP</b>	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault detected with the engine, the braking system, the power steering, etc., or a major electrical fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop .
	<b>Parking brake</b>	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to extinguish the warning lamp; keep your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the <b>Parking brake</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Brakes</b>	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid listed by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 		Fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Assisted steering*</b>	Fixed.	Major failure in the power steering.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






\* Only on the LCD Picto instrument panel.






Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Door(s) open</b>	Fixed and associated with a message identifying the door.	Close the door or boot.
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	
	<b>Belt(s) not buckled / unbuckled**</b>	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue into the buckle.
	<b>Front left belt not buckled/ unbuckled*</b>	The front left passenger belt has not been buckled or has been unbuckled.	
	<b>Front right belt not buckled/ unbuckled</b>	The front right passenger belt has not been buckled or has been unbuckled.	
	<b>Battery charge</b>	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).  The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.




\* Only on the LCD Picto instrument panel.




\*\* Only on the LCD Text instrument panel.





Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Engine oil pressure</b>	Fixed.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop .
	<b>Maximum coolant temperature</b>	Fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	<b>Engine self-diagnosis system</b>	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning light should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
		Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the service warning lamp.	A minor failure in the engine has been detected.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 	<b>STOP</b>	Fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	A major failure in the engine has been detected.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake</b>	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake</b>	Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu.	For more information on the <b>Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake</b> system, refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</b>	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	<b>Under-inflation</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	One or more wheels has insufficient pressure.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on <b>Tyre under-inflation detection</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
				


Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)</b>	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Airbags</b>	Temporarily on.	This warning light comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning light should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Passenger's airbag system</b>	Fixed.	<p>The control switch, located at the right side of the dashboard, is at the "OFF" position.</p> <p>The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the "OFF" position.</p> <p>The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.</p> <p>You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).</p>	<p>Set the control to the "ON" position to activate the passenger front airbag.</p> <p>In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.</p>




Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Particle filter (diesel)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. For more information on <b>Checks</b> and particularly those related to particle filters, refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the particle filter's additive level being too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Quickly arrange for a top-up by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop. For more information on <b>Checking the levels</b> and particularly on the level of additive, refer to the corresponding section.
 	<b>Min fuel level</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on, <b>around 5 litres of fuel</b> remain in the tank. You are now starting to use the fuel reserve.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp reappears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible warning and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "0". Tank capacity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Petrol: 45 litres approximately.</li> <li>- Diesel: approximately 42 or 50 litres (depending on version).</li> </ul> Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Water present in the diesel fuel*</b>	Fixed.	The diesel filter contains water.  Risk of damaging the fuel injection system on diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	<b>Lane departure alert**</b>	Flashing (orange), accompanied by an audible signal.	A lane is being crossed, right side. A lane is being crossed, left side.  Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed.	The lane departure warning system is faulty.  Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.


\* Only on the LCD Picto instrument panel.

\*\* Only on the LCD text instrument panel.




Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>AdBlue®</b> <b>(BlueHDi Diesel)</b>	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1,500 miles (2,400 km).	As soon as possible, top up the AdBlue®. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km).	You <b>must</b> refuel AdBlue® to <b>avoid running out</b> . You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue®. It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 +  + 	<b>SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)</b> Fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop <b>without delay, to avoid a breakdown.</b>
	Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to restart the engine, you <b>must</b> call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






 For topping up or for more information on the **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, refer to the corresponding section.






Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations	
	<b>Service</b>	Temporarily on, with a message displayed.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	<p>Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel.</p> <p>You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off).</p> <p>For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	<p>Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.</p> <p>Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.</p>



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Diesel engine pre-heating</b>	Fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction made using the "START/STOP" button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary.	The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With an ignition switch and key, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the clutch pedal remains pressed with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	<b>Rear foglamp</b>	Fixed.	The rear foglamp has been switched on using the ring on the lighting control lever.	Turn the ring on the lighting control lever to the rear to switch off the rear foglamp.
	<b>Blind spot monitoring system*</b>	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	For more information on <b>Blind spot monitoring</b> , refer to the corresponding section.

\* Only on the LCD text instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.), the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		Flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on <b>Stop &amp; Start</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Left-hand directional indicator lights</b>	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved down.	
	<b>Right-hand direction indicator</b>	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved up.	
	<b>Sidelamps</b>	Fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	<b>Front foglamps</b>	Fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk twice backwards to switch off the foglamps.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 <p><b>Automatic headlamp dipping</b></p>	Fixed.	<p>The function has been activated via the <b>Vehicle / Driving</b> menu of the touch screen tablet.</p> <p>The lighting stalk is in the "AUTO" position.</p>	<p>The camera, placed on the top of the windscreen, manages the main beam headlamps or dipped headlamps operation, according to the outside lighting and the driving conditions.</p> <p>For more information on the <b>Automatic headlamp dipping</b>, refer to the corresponding section.</p>
 <p><b>Dipped beam headlights</b></p>	Fixed.	The lighting lever is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
 <p><b>Main beam headlights</b></p>	Fixed.	The lighting lever has been pulled towards you.	Pull the lever to return to dipped beam headlamps.
 <p><b>Foot on brake</b></p>	Fixed.	Insufficient pressure on brake pedal.	<p>With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake to unlock the lever and come out of position <b>P</b>.</p> <p>If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning light will remain on.</p>
 <p><b>Foot on the clutch pedal*</b></p>	Fixed.	In STOP mode of the Stop & Start, the transition to START mode has been rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully pressed down.	It must be pressed down completely to allow the engine to transition to START mode.

\* Only with the LCD Picto instrument panel.

## Indicators

### Coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.



**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**



Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

**!** After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

**i** For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Service indicator

Warning and indicator	State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Service spanner	Fixed, temporary when the ignition is switched on.	<p>There are between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,800 miles (3,000 km) before the next service is due.</p> <p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) before the next service is due.</li> <li>- an alert indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) as well as the period before the next service is due.</li> </ul> <p>The service spanner goes off after a few seconds. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	<p>Less than 600 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.</p> <p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.</li> <li>- an alert message indicates the distance remaining as well as the period before the next service is due.</li> </ul> <p>The service spanner is on to indicate that service is required very soon. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>

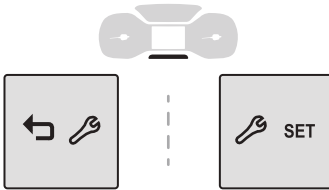
Warning and indicator	State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	<p>Service spanner</p>	<p>Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.</p>	<p>The servicing interval has been exceeded.</p>
	<p>Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on, associated with the service warning lamp.</p>	<p>Service date passed for Diesel BlueHDi versions.</p>	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the total distance recorder display line indicates the distance travelled since the due date was reached. Value preceded by the "-" sign.</li> <li>- an alert message indicates that the due date has passed.</li> </ul> <p>The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed.</p> <p>The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.</p>

**i** The distance indicated (in kilometres or miles) is calculated according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

## Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself, switch off the ignition:



- ☞ Press and hold this button.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.

**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

## Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

## Engine oil level indicator

(depending on version)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

## Oil level correct

This is indicated, depending on instrument panel, by the display "OIL OK" or by the message "Oil level correct".

## Oil level insufficient

This is indicated, depending on the instrument panel, by the display "OIL" or by the message "Oil level incorrect", accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Oil level indicator fault

This is indicated, depending on the instrument panel, by the display "OIL\_ \_" or by the message "Oil level measurement invalid", accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.

**!** In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.


Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

### In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

**!** The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

#### Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.

 SET Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range with the message "AdBlue: Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)" followed, if the tank level of AdBlue permits, with a message indicating that you can add at least 10 litres.

SET 000

#### Remaining range between 1,500 and 350 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of "NO START IN" and a distance on the instrument panel, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented – (e.g.: "NO START IN 900 miles (1,500 km)" means "Starting will be prevented in 900 miles (1,500 km)").

When driving, the message comes up every 200 miles (300 km) until the tank is topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible. It is recommended that you not top up by more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

**i** For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

#### Range less than 350 miles



When switching on the ignition, this warning light flashes and the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and a distance on the instrument panel, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented – (e.g.: "NO START IN 200 miles (300 km)" means "Starting will be prevented in 200 miles (300 km)").

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**i** For more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.



## Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, the warning lamp flashes and the SERVICE warning lamp lights up, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres on the instrument panel – ("NO START IN 0 miles" (0 km) means "Starting prevented").

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

**!** To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

For more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

**!** An engine immobiliser is activated automatically after you have driven a further 650 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### In the event of the detection of a fault



The AdBlue, SERVICE and self-diagnostic warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

### During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1,100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument cluster of "NO START IN (600 km)" and a distance, indicating the driving range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented – (e.g.: "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").

While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds as long as the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

### Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lights come on and the AdBlue warning light flashes, accompanied by the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres – ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented") in the instrument cluster.

**!** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

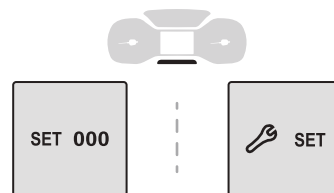
**i** When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

### Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

### Trip distance recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

#### Resetting the trip recorder


☞ With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.

## Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen



If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can still configure some equipment by using the **LCD text instrument panel** display.

### Control buttons

**SET 000** A long press of this button takes you to the configuration menu, a short press confirms.

-  Pressing one of these buttons lets you move in a menu, a list; change a value.

+ 

  Pressing this button takes you back up a level or cancels the current operation.

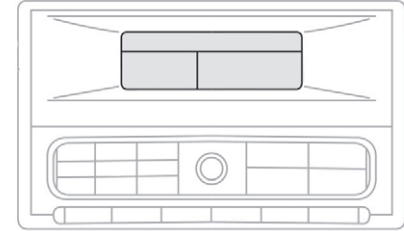
### Display screen menus

- LIGHTING:
  - DAYTIME LAMPS,
  - AUTO HEADLAMPS (Automatic switching on of headlamps),
  - GUIDE LAMPS (Guide-me-home lighting),
  - WELCOME LAMPS (Welcome lighting).

- DRIVE ASSIST:
  - TYRE PRESSURES (Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system),
  - VIGILANCE ALT (Fatigue Detection System),
  - ADVISED SPEED (Speed limit recognition),
  - COLLISION ALT (Collision risk alert),
  - PARKING (Parking assistance).

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

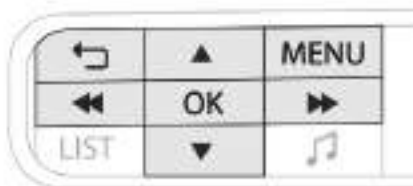
## Monochrome screen C Displays on the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- visual parking sensor information,
- the audio source being listened to,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

## Controls



From your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ the MENU button for access to the **main menu**,
  - ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
  - ☞ the "◀" or "▶" buttons to change the value of a setting,
  - ☞ the OK button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the Back button to abandon the operation in progress.

## Main menu



- ☞ Press the MENU button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",

- "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Connections",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the OK button.

## "Multimedia" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with the use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat). For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

## "Telephone" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.

For more information on the "Telephone" application, see the "Audio and telematics" section.

## "Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

## Warning log

It summarises the alert messages of the functions, displaying them on the screen.

## "Connections" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files). For more information on the "Connections" application, see the "Audio and telematics" section.

## "Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Display configuration".

### Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the following equipment to be activated/deactivated, depending on the version and/or country of sale:

- Vehicle lighting
  - "Daytime lights",
- Interior lighting
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps",
  - "Welcome lighting".
- Comfort
  - Tyre inflation,
  - Fatigue Detection System,
  - Parking assistance.
- Driving assistance
  - "Speed recommendation",
  - "Blind spot monitoring".

For more information on the different equipment, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Display configuration

This menu allows you to change the language used by the display from a defined list.

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display personalisation",
- "Choice of language",

**!** As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention when stationary.

## Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information, and, depending on equipment, allows:
  - the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
  - the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
- access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

### Principles

Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then use the buttons that appear on the touch screen.

Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.

To deactivate/activate a function, press OFF/ON. To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

**i** After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to return to the previous page.

## Menus



### Radio Media.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Mirror Screen or Connected navigation.\*

See the 'Audio and telematics' section.



### Air conditioning.

Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Heating, Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.



### Telephone.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Applications.

Allows the display of the connected services available. See the 'Audio and telematics' section.



### Vehicle or Driving.\*

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume control/mute.

See the 'Audio and telematics' section.

**i** Press with three fingers on the touch screen to display the menu carousel.

\* Depending on equipment.

## Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Recall of the air conditioning information, and access to a simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Summary of information from the **Radio Media**, **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions\*.
- Notifications zone (texts and email)\*.






- Access to **Configuration**.

## "Vehicle" menu / "Driving" menu

### Tab "Vehicle settings"




The functions are grouped into 3 families.

## CITROËN Connect Nav:

Families	Functions
<p>"Security"</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Wiping in reverse gear": Activation/deactivation of the rear wiper when in reverse gear if the front wiper is on.</li> <li>- "Active Safety Brake": activation / deactivation of the Active Safety Brake.</li> <li>- "Fatigue Detection System": activation / deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.</li> <li>- "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition.</li> </ul>
<p>"Driving lighting"</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Daytime running lamps" (LED daytime running lamps ) depending on country of sale.</li> <li>- "Directional headlamps": activation / deactivation of cornering lighting.</li> </ul>
<p>"Comfort lighting"</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation / deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>- "Welcome lighting": activation / deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>- "Mood lighting": activation / deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.</li> </ul>

\* Depending on equipment

## CITROËN Connect Radio:

Families	Functions
<b>Headlights</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>- "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>- "Daytime running lamps" (LED daytime running lamps ) depending on country of sale.</li> </ul>
<b>Comfort</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation / deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear.</li> </ul>
<b>Security</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Automatic emergency braking": activation / deactivation of automatic emergency braking.</li> <li>- "Fatigue Detection System": activation / deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.</li> <li>- "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition.</li> </ul>

**i** For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

## Tab "Driving functions"




Function	Comment
"Stop & Start"	Activation/ Deactivation of the function.
"Parking sensors"	Activation/ Deactivation of the function.
"Traction control"	Activation/ Deactivation of the function.
"Blind spot sensors"	Activation/ Deactivation of the function.
"Under-inflation detection reset"	Reset of the tyre under-inflation detection system.
"Diagnostic"	Summary of current alerts.

**i** For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.



## "Settings" menu

### CITROËN Connect Nav






Button	Comments
	Selection of a topic.
	Audio settings (sound ambience, distribution, level, voice volume, ringer volume).
	Switch off the screen.
OPTIONS	Touch screen settings.

### Touch screen settings








The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

These settings are also accessible using the "**OPTIONS**" key on the "**Settings**" menu.

Button	Comments
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of language for the touch screen display.
	Setting the date and time. Option of synchronisation with GPS.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.

### CITROËN Connect Radio

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or the <b>MENU</b> button.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel ambient lighting.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Touch screen settings.
	Activation and configuration of the settings for the Wi-Fi.

### Touch screen settings



The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

These settings are also accessible from the "OPTIONS" key on the "Settings" menu.

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit),</li> <li>- distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).</li> </ul>
	Choice of language for the touch screen display.
	Setting the date and time.

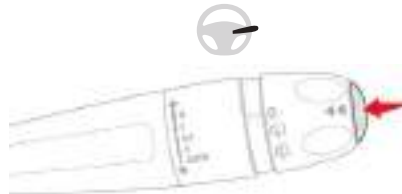
## Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

### Data displays

They are displayed successively.

- Daily mileage.
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Time counter of the Stop & Start.
- Information on the speed limit recognition system.



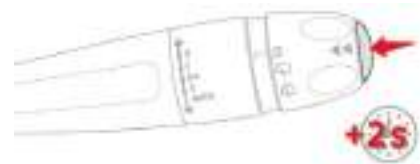
☞ Press this button, located at the tip of the **wiper control stalk**.



☞ Press the knob on the steering wheel.

### Reset trip

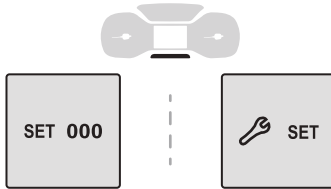
The reset will be performed when the trip is displayed.



☞ Press this button, located at the edge of the **wiper control stalk**, for more than two seconds.



- Press the knob on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.



- Press this button for more than two seconds.

## A few definitions...

### Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

**i** This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 20 miles (30 km). After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated over the last few seconds.

**i** This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

### Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



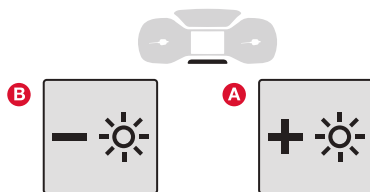
**Time counter Stop & Start**  
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Lighting dimmer

Allows manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen according to the outside lighting. Only works when the vehicle lights are on (except daytime running lamps) and in night mode.

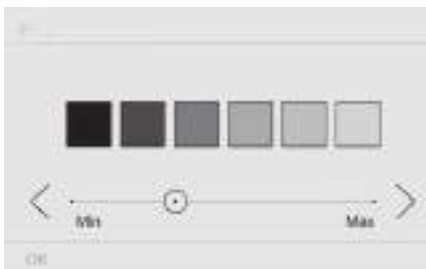
### Two buttons



Lamps lit, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the ambience of the vehicle or button **B** to reduce it.

As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

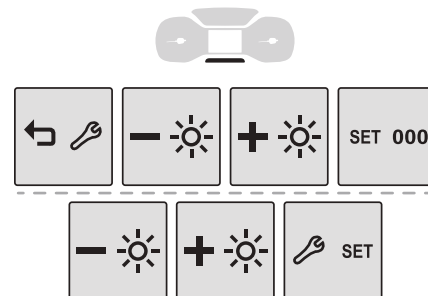
## Touch screen



- ☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the cursor.

**i** The brightness can be adjusted differently for day mode (lighting control stalk in position "0") and night mode (lighting control stalk in any other position).

## Date and time adjustment Without audio system



You can adjust the date and time in the instrument panel display.

- SET 000** ☞ Hold this button down.

↶ SET
- +** ☞ Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

---

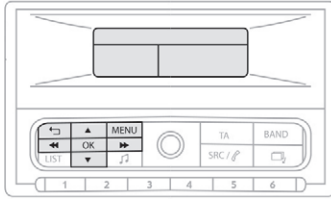
---
- SET 000** ☞ Press this button briefly to confirm.

↶ SET
- +** ☞ Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

---

---

## With audio system



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **OK**.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or press the **Back** button to cancel.

## With CITROËN Connect Radio



- ☞ Select the Settings menu.

- ☞ Select "**System configuration**".



- ☞ Select "**Date and time**".

- ☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Press this button to confirm.

## With CITROËN Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with GPS is deactivated.



- ☞ Select the Settings menu.

- ☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



- ☞ Select "**Setting the time-date**".

- ☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.



- ☞ Press this button to confirm.

## Additional adjustments

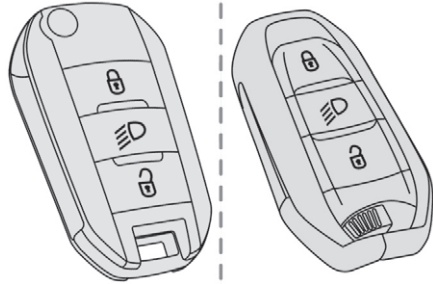
You can choose:

- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Remote control

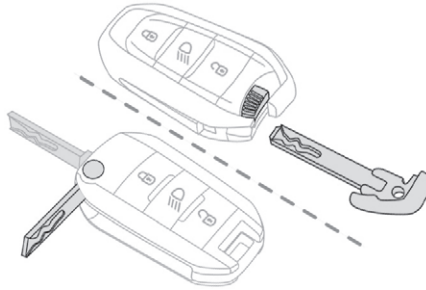
### General points



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- opening of the fuel tank cap,
- remote switching on of the lighting,
- activation / deactivation of the alarm,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.

Under normal conditions, it is recommended to use the remote control.



The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- turning the child lock on or off,
- activation/deactivation of the passenger's front airbag,
- back-up door locking,
- switching on the ignition and starting / stopping the engine.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc.

For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the associated section.

### Ejecting the key



#### Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Press this button; the key is ejected from its housing.

To avoid damaging the mechanism, first press this button to fold it.



#### Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

## Unlocking the vehicle



- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking



- ☞ Press this button.

On the first press of the locking button, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be totally activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and if no action is taken with the doors or with the boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm had been previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

### Deadlocking



- ☞ Make a first press on this button.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds on the second press of the locking button.



Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light.



- ☞ Press this button.

The sidelamps and the dipped headlamps come on for 30 seconds. Pressing the button again before the end of this period switches the lamps off immediately.

## Keyless Entry and Starting



System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

**i** The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.  
For more information on the **Remote Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Unlocking the vehicle



**☞** With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

**i** The flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:

- the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.

However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

**!** As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.

Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

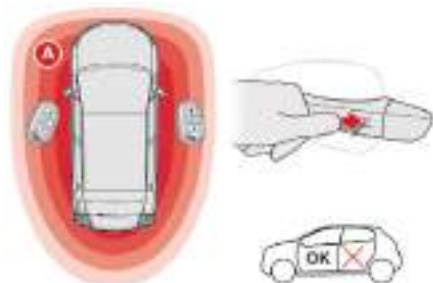


! In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.

For more information on **Starting with Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Locking the vehicle

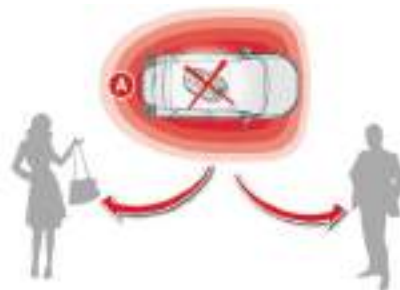
### Normal locking



☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

- i The lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:
- the locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
  - the activation of the alarm for other versions.



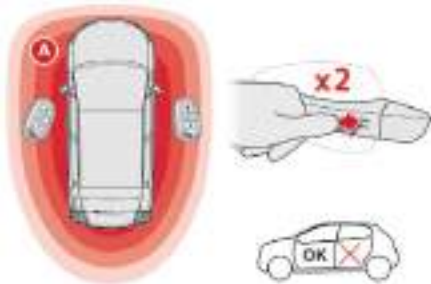
! For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

2

## Deadlocking

**!** Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- ☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press the front door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

**!** **Lost keys, remote control, electronic key**  
 Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code. The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

### Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. It may become inoperative. It will then be necessary to reinitialise it again. The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

### Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

### Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

### Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

### When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

## Back-up procedures

### Total unlocking / locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.

Refer to the corresponding section.

In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding section.



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

**i** If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

**i** If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

### Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

#### Driver's door

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

#### Passenger doors

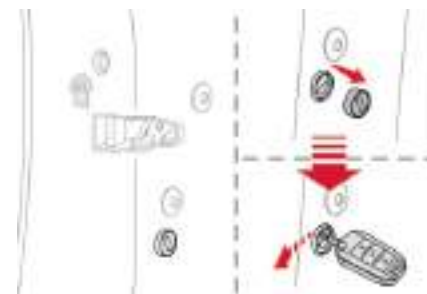
##### Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.

#### Locking

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

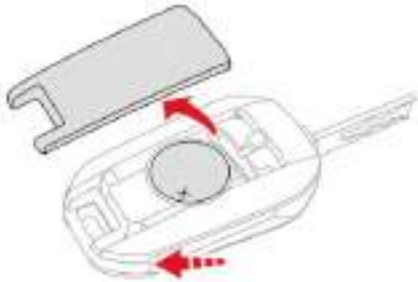


- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

## Changing the battery

A message is displayed on the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

**Version without Keyless Entry and Starting**  
**Battery type: CR1620 / 3 volts.**



**Version with Keyless Entry and Starting**  
**Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.**



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cutout.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.

For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

## Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

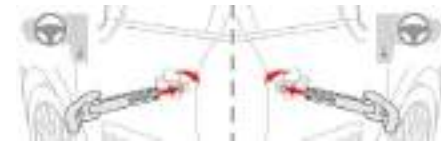
## Version without Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

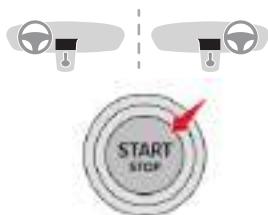
## Version with Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- ☞ With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P**, then firmly press the brake pedal.



- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
- The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

## Doors

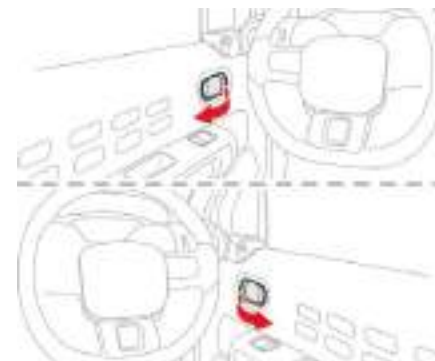
### Opening

#### From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or holding the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

#### From inside



- ☞ Pull a door opening lever on the inside; this unlocks the whole vehicle.

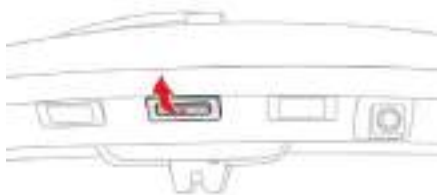
## Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:



- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message displayed for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, an audible signal sounds for a few seconds.

## Boot Opening



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ☞ Lift the lid.

## Closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

If the boot is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message for a few seconds.

## Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

## Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

## Locking after closing

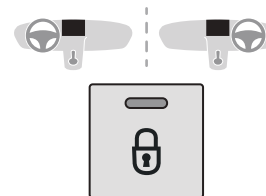
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

## Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

## Manual mode

## Locking



- ☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

**i** If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

## Release

- ☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

### **i** When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door levers to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

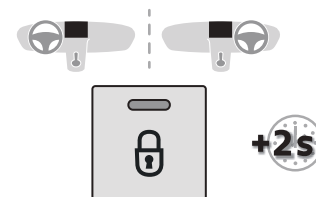


This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

### **i** Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear. Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

## Activation / Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

- ☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

**!** Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

## Alarm

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

System that protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

### - perimeter monitoring

The system checks the vehicle (locked or unlocked).

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

### Self-protection function

The system checks the status of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, central control unit or the siren wiring is out of service or damaged.

**!** For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with alarm system

### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active. The locking button's indicator lamp, located on the dashboard, flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

**i** Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds. If an opening (door, boot, etc.) is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the button's indicator lamp goes off.



## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

## Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, and for 10 seconds afterwards, the flashing locking button indicates a system fault. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric windows



1. Front left electric window.
2. Front right electric window.
3. Right-hand rear electric window.
4. Left-hand rear electric window.
5. Deactivating the rear electric window control switches.

## Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

## Automatic operation (depending on version)

To open or close the window, press or pull switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i** The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

## Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

## Deactivating the rear window controls



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.

With the warning lamp on, the rear switches are deactivated. With the warning lamp off, the switches are active.

## Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each window:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres each time. Perform the operation again until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

**!** In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.  
When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.  
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.  
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.  
Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

## Front seats

**!** As a safety measure, adjustments to the driver's seat must only be done when stationary.

### Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomics of your driving position, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- height of the head restraint,
- backrest angle,
- cushion height,
- longitudinal position of the seat,
- height of the steering wheel,
- the interior and door mirrors.



**!** Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

## Settings

### Longitudinal



☞ Raise the control **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

### Backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob **B** to adjust the backrest.

# 3

## Height (driver only)



- ☞ Pull the control **C** upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it, as many times as required, to obtain the desired position.

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Front head restraints Height adjustment



### Upward:

- ☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

### Downward:

- ☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

**!** The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the headrest is level with the top of the head.

## Removing a head restraint

- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

## Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

## Heated seats



☞ With the engine running, use the adjustment knob to switch on and choose the heating level desired:

- 0: Off.
- 1: Low.
- 2: Medium.
- 3: High.

The front seats can be heated individually.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

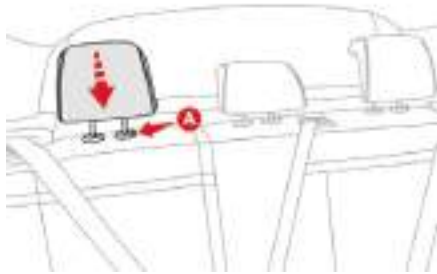
To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

## Rear seats

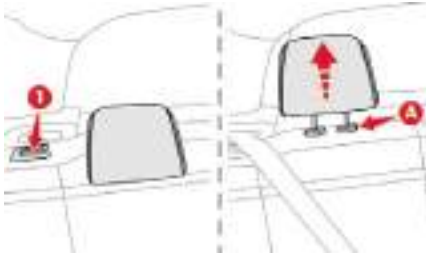
Bench seat with a fixed cushion and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot load space.

## Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - ☞ press lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.



The rear head restraints can be removed.

### To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using control **1**,
- ☞ tilt the backrest slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

### To refit a head restraint:

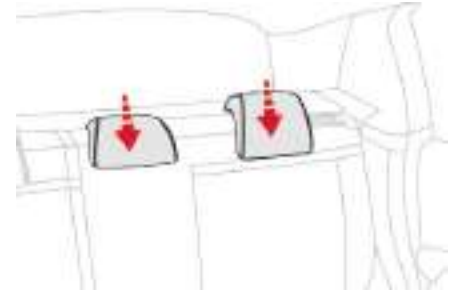
- ☞ Drive the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press lug **A** and then push the head restraint fully down.

**!** Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.  
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for outer seats are not interchangeable.

## Folding the backrests

**!** Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

First steps:



- ☞ lower the head restraints,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ check that nothing and no one could interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.

## Steering wheel adjustment

3



- ☞ Press backrest release grip 1.
- ☞ Guide backrest 2 down to the horizontal position.

**i** When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grip.

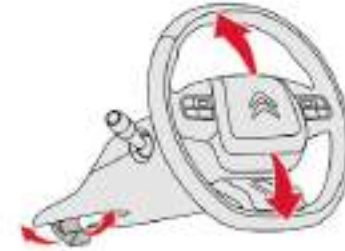
## Returning the backrests to their original position

- !** First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ☞ Put backrest 2 in the upright position and push on it to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in release grip 1.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

**!** Caution, a backrest that has not latched correctly compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.  
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – Risk of serious injury!

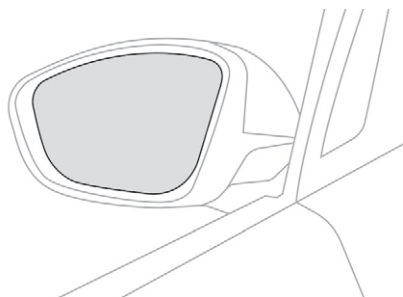


- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

**!** For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be made with the vehicle stationary.

## Mirrors

### Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror allowing for the lateral rear vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

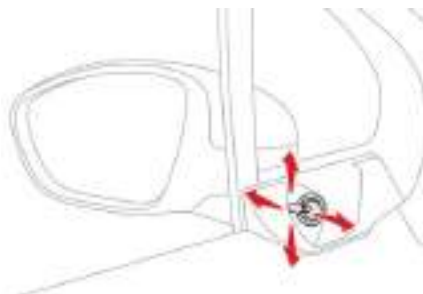
### Demisting – Defrosting



Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear window**, refer to the associated section.

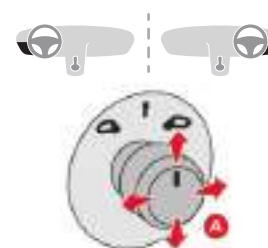
### Manual adjustment



- ☞ Operate the lever in the four directions to adjust the angle of the mirror glass.

**!** As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

### Electric adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control to the central position.

### Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

- ☞ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.



## Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

### Manual model



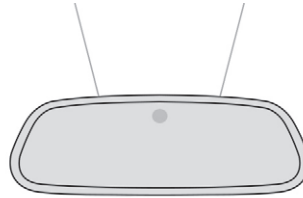
#### Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

#### Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

### Automatic "electrochromic" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

**i** In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Ventilation

### Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

### Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

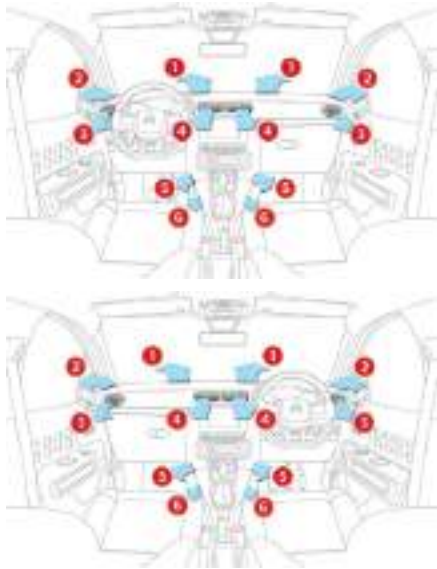
### Control panel



Depending on equipment, the controls for this system will be accessible via the **Air conditioning** menu on the touch screen, or via the centre console panel located below the audio system.

The demisting/defrosting controls for the rear screen are located below the touch screen, or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.

## Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable and closable side air vent.
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Rear air outlets.

## Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- I** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
  - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
  - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
  - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

To avoid the windows misting up and deterioration in the quality of the air:

- do not drive for too long with the ventilation switched off.
- do not keep air recirculation set for an extended period.



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

### Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Heating / Manual air conditioning



The heating system works only when the engine is running.



The manual air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

## Adjusting the temperature

Turn the control from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

## Adjusting the air flow

Turn the thumb wheel to obtain a comfortable air flow.

Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.



Windscreen and footwells.



Windscreen.

The distribution of the air can be adjusted by placing the control in an intermediate position.

## Air intake / Air recirculation

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This function can also be used to speed up the heating or cooling of the passenger compartment.



☞ Press this button to choose the passenger compartment air intake mode

When the indicator lamp is off, the exterior air intake function is activated.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air recirculation function is activated, the intake of exterior air is inhibited.

## Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

## Switching on

A/C

☞ Press this button to switch on the air conditioning.

**i** The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

## Switching off

A/C

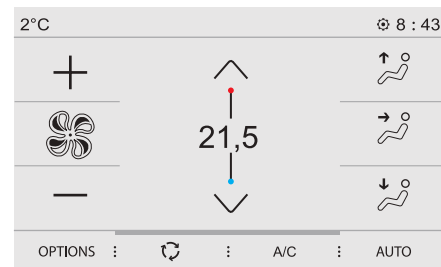
☞ Press this button again to switch off the air conditioning.

## Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.



☞ Select the **Air conditioning** menu in the touch screen to display the controls page for the system.



## Temperature adjustment



☞ Press this button to increase the value.




☞ Press this button to decrease the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.



## Automatic comfort programme

### Activation / Deactivation

- AUTO**  Press the **AUTO** button to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

### Automatic programme mode setting

- OPTIONS**  Go to the secondary page by pressing this button to adjust the automatic comfort program by choosing one of the three available settings.
-  To change the current setting, press the button several times in succession to access the desired mode:



**"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

**"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

**"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow.


This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the last selected setting remains. Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

**i** In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.




## Manual control

You can manually adjust the air flow and distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the automatic comfort programme is deactivated.

- AUTO**  Press the **AUTO** button to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

### Air flow adjustment

-   Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the air flow.
- 

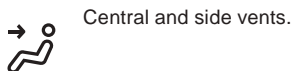
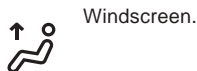
The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made. By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

**"OFF"** is displayed alongside the fan.

**!** Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function.

**i** The three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In this case, the flows of air from the central and side vents and the footwell vents are favoured.


## Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:


- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

### Switching on

**A/C**  Press this button to switch on the air conditioning.

**i** The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

### Switching off

**A/C**  Press this button again to switch off the air conditioning.



## Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air prevents exterior odours and smoke from entering the passenger compartment.

**i** This function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.



-  Press this button to recirculate the interior air.
-  Press this button again to allow the intake of exterior air.

**!** Avoid the prolonged use of interior air recirculation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Ventilation function with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** settings and the **air distribution** in the passenger compartment depending on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

## Front demist – defrost



These markings on the control panels indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows. During the winter period, direct the side air vents towards the side windows to optimise their demisting and defrosting.

## With control panel on the centre console

### Switching on

- ☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Set the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

### Switching off

- ☞ Put the air flow control to the **fan** position.

## With touch screen

### Switching on



- ☞ Press this button.  
The light in the button comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

### Switching off

- ☞ Press this button again to switch it off.  
The light in the button goes off.

**i** With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

## Rear screen demist – defrost

### Switching on



- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The button indicator lamp goes on.

### Switching off

Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.



Switch off the heating of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as you judge it possible, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

## Courtesy lamp



1. Courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

## Courtesy light



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

- i** In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
  - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
  - with the engine running, unlimited.

## Map reading lamps

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

- !** Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

## Panoramic glass sunroof

It includes a concealing flap in two parts that improves thermal and acoustic comfort in the passenger compartment.

### Opening



- ☞ Pull the blind backwards until it locks.

### Closing



- ☞ Pull the blind forwards until it locks.



## Boot lighting



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

There are different light times:

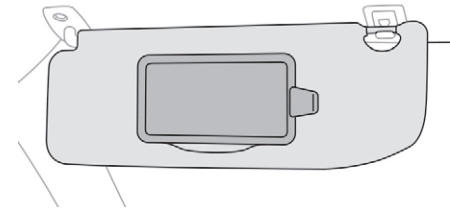
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

## Interior fittings



1. **Sun visor.**
2. **Glove box.**
3. **12 V power socket (max 120W).**
4. **USB socket.**
5. **Jack auxiliary socket.**
6. **Open storage with double cup holder.**
7. **Front armrest.**  
(depending on version)
8. **Storage wells.**
9. **Mats.**  
(depending on version)

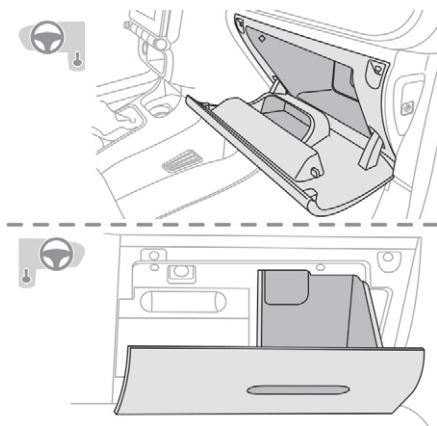
## Sun visor



The driver's sun visor is fitted with a vanity mirror with concealing flap and a map holder (or ticket holder).

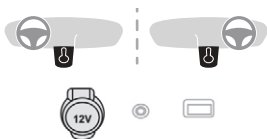
**!** Do not attach or hang anything from the sun visor on the passenger side as this could cause injuries when the frontal airbag is being deployed (fitted in the roof).

## Glove box



It can be used to hold a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

## 12 V socket

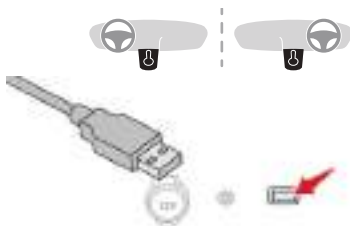


To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (you may otherwise damage your portable device).

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## USB port



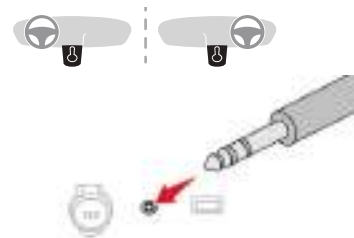
It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.

It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers. You can manage these files using the steering mounted or audio system controls.

**i** When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

For more information about using this equipment, please refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

## Auxiliary socket (JACK)



It allows the connection of a portable device so that you can listen to your music files via the vehicle's speakers.

The management of the files is done using your portable device.

For more information about using this equipment, please refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

## Front armrest

### Height adjustment



- ☞ Lower the armrest completely.
- ☞ Lift it again to the desired position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ Once it is in the high position, lift it to unlock it and bring it to the low position.

## Clothes hooks



They are located above each rear door.

## Mats

### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

### Removing

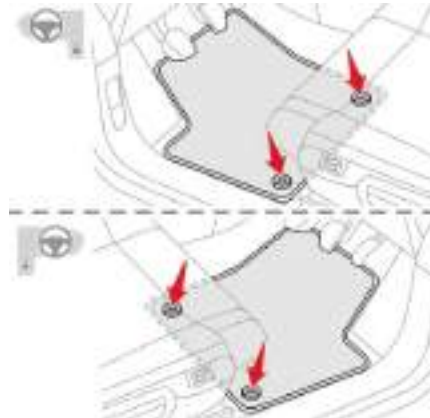
To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,



- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

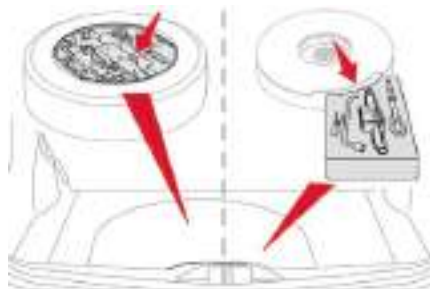
- !** To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
  - never place one mat on top of another.
- The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter. The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

## Boot fittings



1. Rear parcel shelf.
2. Hooks.
3. Under floor storage.
4. Lighting.
5. Stowing rings.
6. Warning triangle.

## Storage box



☞ Pull back the boot carpet to access the storage box.

Depending on configuration, it includes dedicated storage fittings:

- towing eye,
- temporary puncture repair kit,
- warning triangle,
- etc.

**!** For the versions with a storage box: it must be put back in place before loading the boot.

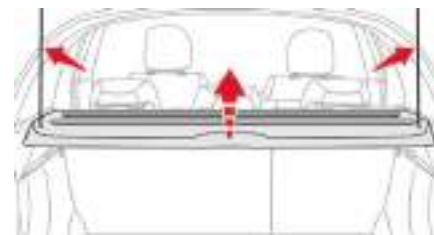
## Hooks



These can be used to secure shopping bags.

**!** Take care to only hang up lightweight bags.

## Rear shelf



To remove the shelf:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ gently lift the shelf, then remove it.

There are several ways of storing it:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat on the bottom of the boot.

## Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

The triangle can be stored on the back panel of the boot, attached with straps.

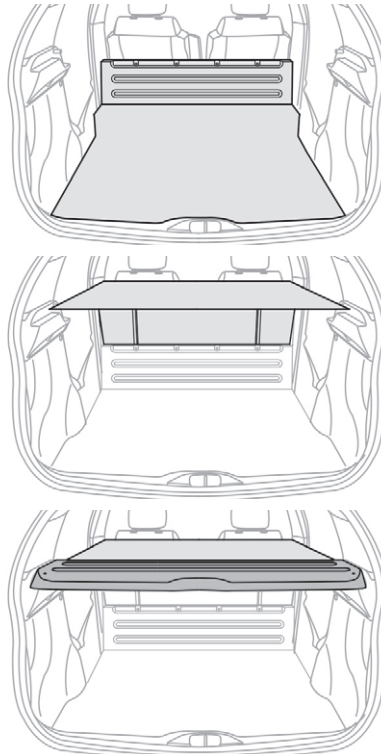
## Assembling the triangle

Refer to the assembling instructions provided with the triangle.

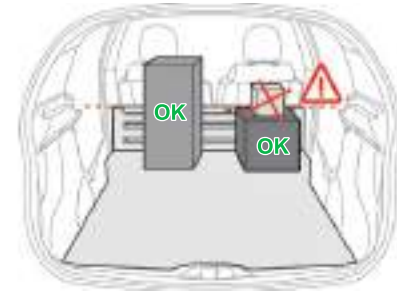
## Positioning the triangle

- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

## Rear shelf (corporate version)



It allows the interior of the vehicle to be masked in addition to the existing shelf.



**!** Do not place objects above the load restraint.



If your vehicle is equipped with a protective grille, you can place objects above the load restraint.



**!** Do not place hard or heavy objects on the rear shelf.  
They can become dangerous projectiles in the event of a sudden braking or impact.

To access the spare wheel on corporate versions:

- Remove the storage well.
- Lift the articulated floor.
- Remove the chock.

## Lighting control stalk

### Main lighting

The front and rear lamps on the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

### Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided (depending on version) to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp,
- front foglamps,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home lighting to facilitate your exit from the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

### Programming

You can adjust the settings of certain functions:

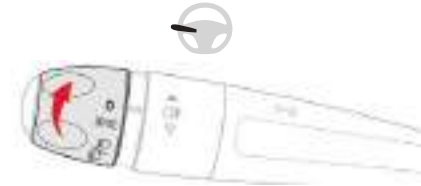
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- daytime running lamps.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

**i** **Travelling abroad**  
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact the CITROËN or qualified workshop dealer.

**i** If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

### Without AUTO lighting



### With AUTO lighting



### Selection ring for main lighting mode

Turn to align the desired symbol with the mark.



Lighting off / Daytime running lamps.



Side lights only.

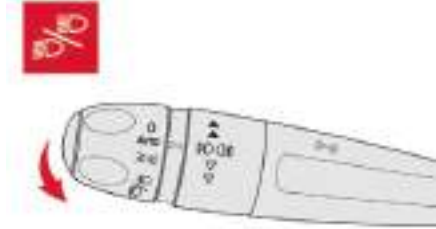


Dipped or main beam headlights.



Automatic illumination of headlamps.

## Dipping the headlamps



Pull the lever to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlights.

In the lighting off and side lights modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlights temporarily ("headlight flash") by keeping the lever pulled.

## Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

## Foglamp selection ring

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlights.

## Rear fog light only



It operates with the sidelamps on.

☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

## Front fog lights and rear fog light



Rotate and release the ring:

☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,

- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,
- ☞ once rearwards to switch off the rear foglamp,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lights are switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

**!** In good or rainy weather, both day and night, using the front foglamps and the rear foglamp is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to turn off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp as soon as they are no longer necessary.



### **i Switching off the lights when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lights turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

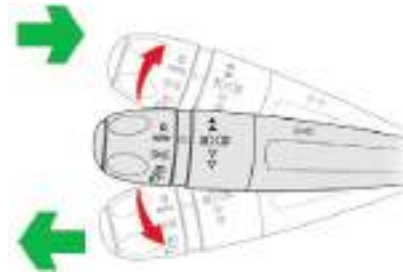
### **i Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off**

To reactivate the lighting control, set the ring to **0** – lamps off, then to the desired position.

When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

## Direction indicators (flashing)



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

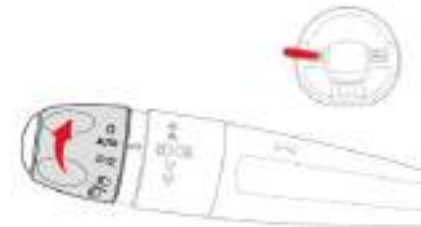
## Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

## Switching on



- ☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. When the function is activated, a message is also displayed.

## Switching off

☞ Turn the ring to another position.  
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating fault

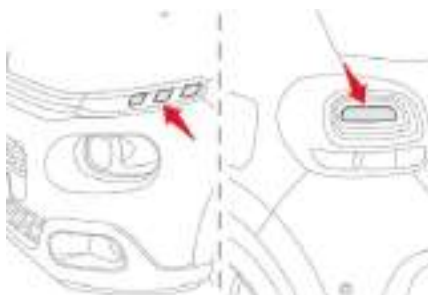


In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel associated with an audible signal and/or a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

**i** In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

## Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps



The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "0" or "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "dipped/main beam headlamps").

**i** In daytime running lamps, the diodes are brighter.

## Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (e.g. when parking on the left, lighting control stalk upwards, the right-hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

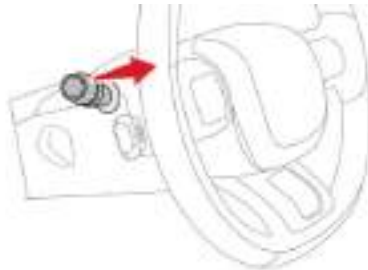
## Guide-me-home lighting

### Automatic

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated (lighting control stalk on AUTO), under low ambient light, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation, deactivation and duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu.

### Manual



The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

### Switching off

Manual follow-me lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

## Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

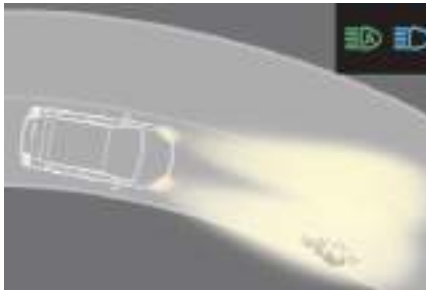
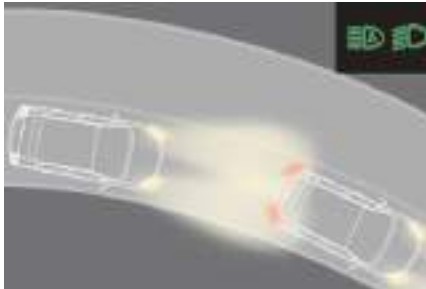
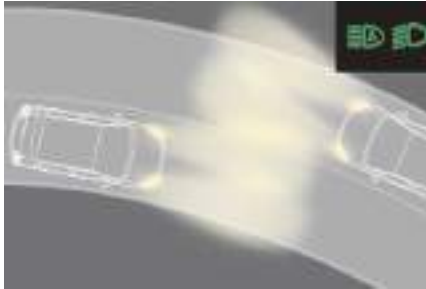
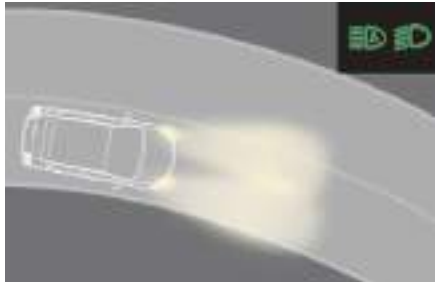
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu.

## Automatic headlamp dipping

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

**!** This system is a driving aid.  
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

**i** The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 15 mph (25 km/h).  
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



## Activation / Deactivation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



☞ In the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

☞ Flash the headlamps (going beyond the point of resistance) to activate the function.

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlights:



- dipped beam is maintained, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.



When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

## Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
  - if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to main beam,
  - if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the function, flash the headlamps again.

**i** The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

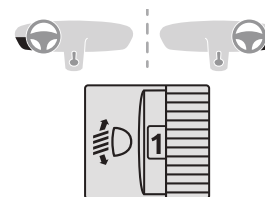
- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on twisty roads, on crossroads.

## Headlight beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. Driver or driver + front passenger.
  - Driver + front passenger + rear passengers.
1. Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot.
  - Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot.
2. Driver on his own + maximum authorised load in the boot.

**i** The initial setting is position 0.

## Wiper control stalk

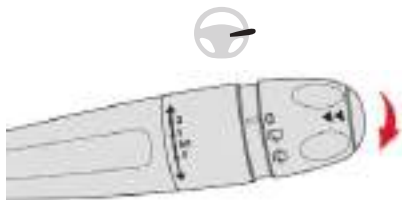
In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

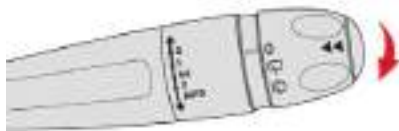
## Manual controls

The windscreen wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

### With manual wipng



### With AUTO wipng



## Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed control lever: raise or lower the lever to the desired position.

- 2** Fast wiping (heavy rain).
- 1** Normal wiping (moderate rain).
- Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
- 0** Off.
- ↓** Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).



or

- AUTO ↓** Automatic wiping (press down, then release) or single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

## Rear wiper





Rear wiper selection ring:

- 0** Off.
-  Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
-  Wash-wipe (set duration).

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

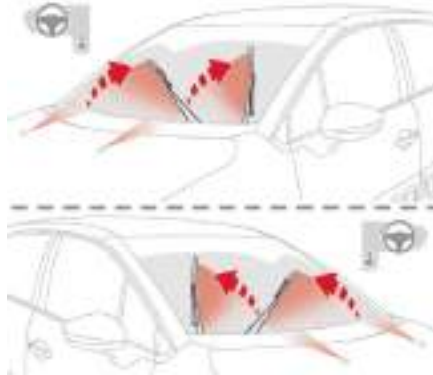
Activation or deactivation of this automatic function can **only** be set via the touch screen.

-  In the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab.
-  Select "**Comfort**" / "**Security**" then "**Rear wiper in reverse**" / "**Wiping in reverse**".

**i** This system is activated by default.

**!** If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

## Front screenwash



Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The screenwash and then the wiper operate for a set period of time.

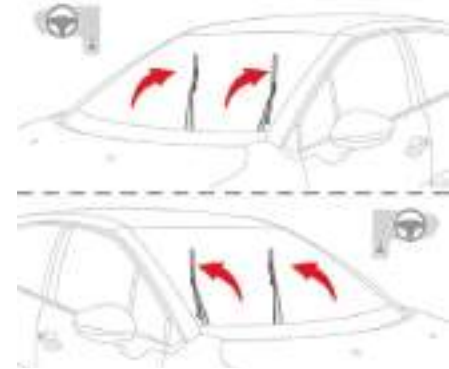
**i** The screenwash jets are not adjustable. Do not try to move them (risk of damage).

**!** To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty. Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

## Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

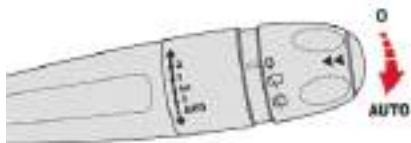


- ⚙** Operate the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.
- ⚙** To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

**i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

## Automatic windscreen wipers



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

### Switching on



Give a short downwards push to the control. A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This symbol appears in the instrument panel display screen and a message is displayed.

### Switching off



Give the control stalk a brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This symbol disappears from the instrument panel display screen and a message is displayed.

**i** The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Do not cover the rain sensor combined with the sunshine sensor and located in the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.



## General safety recommendations

**!** Labels are attached in different places of your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information of your vehicle. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

**!** For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

**!** We draw your attention to the following points:

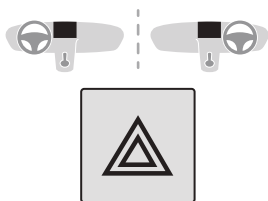
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

**!** Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

**!** Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

## Emergency warning lamps



- ☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. It can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on automatically. They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn



- ☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

## Emergency or assistance call (type 1)



## Localised Emergency Call

**SOS** In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the service "Localised Emergency Call".

**SOS** Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.


"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language\*\* and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched\*\*. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.


**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

\* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

\*\* As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.  
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available at dealers or on [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

## Operation of the system


 When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

 The orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

The orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.  
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.  
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call

 Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.



Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

## Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.



To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

## Emergency or assistance call (type 2)



### Localised Emergency Call

**SOS** In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service\*.

**SOS** Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call. The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language\*\*, and – if necessary – requests the relevant emergency services be dispatched. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

\* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

\*\* As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

## Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

### For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

### For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

- The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.



Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

## Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.



To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

- If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand network, we invite you to check the configuration of these services and, if desired, have a dealer change it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

- For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of "Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

- If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

## Electronic stability programme (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) comprising the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

## Definitions

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

### Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping

distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBD)



When lit up continuously, this warning lamp indicates a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



If this warning lamp comes on, in conjunction with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, an audible signal and a message, it means that the electronic brake force distribution (EBD) is defective.

**You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.**

In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

**i** When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.  
When operating under normal conditions, the ABS may cause the brake pedal to vibrate slightly.

**!** In emergency braking, press the brake pedal hard and maintain this pressure.

**!** After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

### Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by this warning light flashing in the instrument panel.

### Deactivating the ASR using the touch screen

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip. Reactivate the system when grip conditions allow.



The function is deactivated via the touch screen's **Vehicle / Driving** menu. It is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Reactivating the ASR using the touch screen

The system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h). Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually.



The function is reactivated via the touch screen's **Vehicle / Driving** menu. It is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Operating fault



The illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that there is a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



After an impact, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### ! ASR / DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

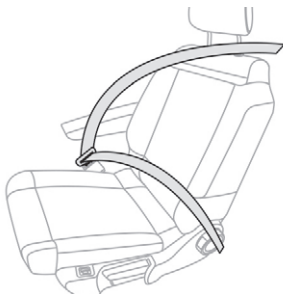
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

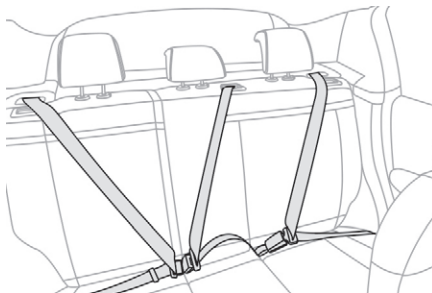
## Seat belts

### Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the passengers. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the passenger, so improving their protection.

### Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a belt, with three fixing points and an inertia reel. The outer seats are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiter.

### Locking

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unlocking

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### Seat belt not fastened / unfastened alerts

#### LCD picto instrument panel.



- A. Front left seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
- B. Front right seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

#### LCD text instrument panel.



- C. Front and rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.





1. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
3. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.



From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this or these warning lamp(s) flash for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this or these warning lamps remain on until the driver or the front passenger and/or the rear passenger(s) fasten their seat belt.

## Front seat belt warning lamp(s)



When switching on the ignition, warning lamp(s) **A** and/or **B** or **C** light(s) up red on the instrument panel and the corresponding (1 or 2) warning lamp(s) light(s) red in the belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display screen if the driver and/or the front/rear passenger(s) has (have) not fastened or has (have) unfastened their seat belt.

## Rear seat belt warning lamp(s)



The corresponding (3 to 5) warning lamp lights up red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag display screen when one or more rear passengers unfastens their seat belts.

## Advice

**!** The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The rollers have an automatic blocking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

### Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

### In the event of an impact Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact

the pyrotechnic device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and, if necessary, replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Airbags

### General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the centre rear passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (with the exception of the centre rear passenger belt).

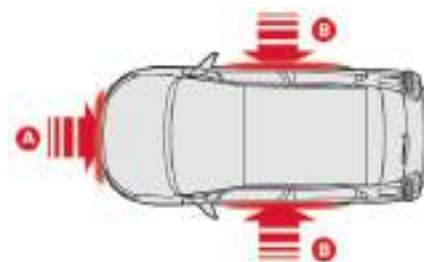
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the centre rear passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

**! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

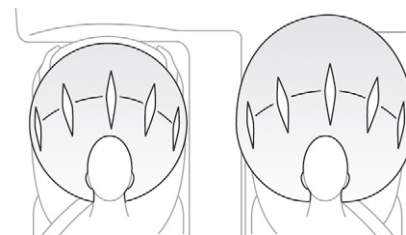
### Impact detection zones



- A. Frontal impact zone.  
B. Side impact zone.

**i** Airbag deployment generates slight smoke emissions and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. Although this smoke is not harmful, sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The noise generated by the deployment of one or more airbags (detonation) may result in mild and temporary loss of hearing.

### Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

## Operating fault



If this lamp in the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags might no longer fire in a crash.

## Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe side impact to minimise the risk of injury to the chest, between hip and shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

## Deployment

The lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a severe side impact covering all or part of side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle. The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front passenger and the corresponding door trim panel.

## Lateral airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

## Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle. The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

## Malfunction



If this warning light on the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

**!** In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

## Advice

**! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries in case of airbag deployment.

### Curtain airbags

Do not attach anything or hang anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not attach or hang anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the side airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

Although one of the main criteria of CITROËN when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in an approved child seat suited to their weight** and installed on a vehicle seat fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.\*
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

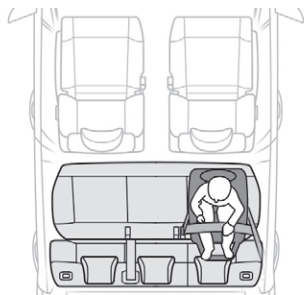
**i** CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

\* The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Consult the legislation in force in your country.

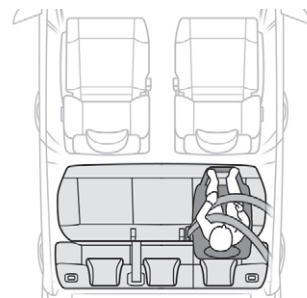
## Child seat at the rear

### "Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### "Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

- i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

## Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

## Child seat at the front

(Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.)

### "Rearward facing"



When a **rearward facing** child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

**!** The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.**

### "Forward facing"



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

**!** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



**Passenger seat adjusted to the rearmost longitudinal position.**

# 5

## Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

**!** Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, this warning is available in all of the languages required.

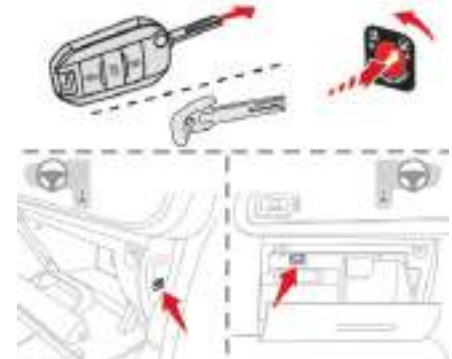
## Passenger airbag OFF



**i** For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the OFF position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen or on the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.



**!** To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

## Reactivating the passenger's front airbag

When you remove a **rearward facing** child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the ON position to reactivate the airbag and so ensure the safety of a front seat passenger in the event of an accident.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen or in the instrument panel for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام الأمان المطلق الوجه باتجاه الورااء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية لدمية مقلدة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة له.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkää ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko pri laikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiēt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalixx tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNAJĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

## Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

### Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



**L1**

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg










**L6**

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

## Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			Passenger's front airbag	Weight of the child / indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	9-18 kg (group 1) From 1 to about 3 years old	15-25 kg (group 2) From 3 to about 6 years old	22-36 kg (group 3) From 6 to about 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat		Deactivated, "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 (d)	Seat behind the driver's seat	 		U	U	U	U
	Seat behind the passenger's seat	 		U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat (e)			U	U	U	U

## Safety

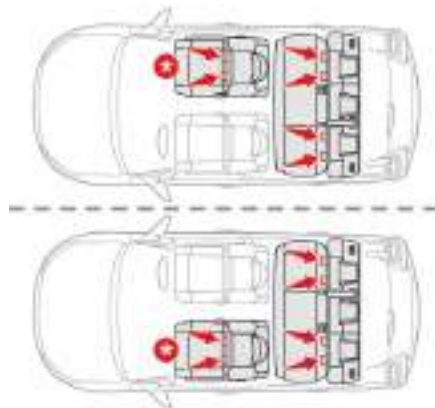
---

- U:** seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- UF:** seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.
- X:** seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.
- (a)** Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b)** Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c)** Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.
- (d)** To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (e)** A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on this seat.

**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## "ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX regulations. The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:

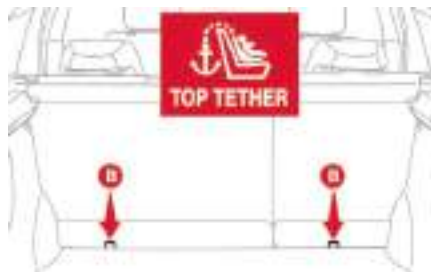


\* Depending on version.

There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle's seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, behind the seat, indicated by a marking, for securing the **top tether**.

This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

**ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have a **top tether** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat at the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat in this position (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ pass the tether of the child seat over the seat back, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods,

- ☞ fix the hook of the top tether to ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the top tether.

**i** When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear position of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid interference with the operation of the seat belt.

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

**i** For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

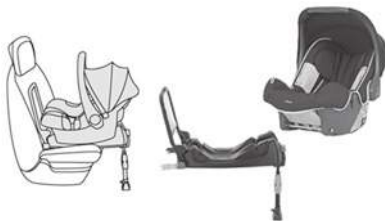
## ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

**i** Also consult the installation notes of the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

### "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: E)

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a height-adjustable support leg, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

### "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: B1)

**Group 1: from 9 to 18kg**



Installed only in the forward facing position. Is attached to rings **A** and upper ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using a top tether. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.



## Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

			Weight of the child / indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Cot		Rearward facing			Rearward facing		Forward facing		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat		Passenger's front airbag										
Row 1 (a)	ISOFIX passenger seat*	Deactivated, "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF / IL		
		Activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF / IL		
	Non-ISOFIX passenger seat*	Deactivated, "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2	Seat behind the driver's seat		X(1)		IL(3)		IL		IL(3)	IL	IUF / IL	
	Seat behind the passenger's seat		X(1)		IL(2)		IL		IL(2)	IL	IUF / IL	
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

\* Depending on version.

## Safety

- (a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seating position.
- IUF:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **Universal** seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the top tether.
- IL:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **Semi-Universal** seat which is either:
- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
  - "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
  - a cot fitted with a top tether or a support leg.
- For securing the top tether using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the associated section.
- X:** seat is not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat or cot of the weight group indicated.
- (1): The installation of a cot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
- (2): adjust the front seat to the furthest forward position.
- (3): adjust the front seat to the maximum height.

**!** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.










## Summary table of locations for i-Size child seats

The i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

These i-Size child seats also have:

- either a top tether that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg resting on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat, which prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the associated section.

	Seat		Passenger's front airbag	i-Size restraint system	
Row 1 (a)	ISOFIX passenger seat*		Deactivated, "OFF"	i-U	
			Activated "ON"	i-UF	
	Non-ISOFIX passenger seat*		Deactivated, "OFF"	Not i-Size	
			Activated "ON"	Not i-Size	
Row 2	Seat behind the driver's seat			i-U	
					
	Seat behind the passenger's seat				i-U
					
	Centre rear seat				Not i-Size

\* Depending on version.

## Safety

---

- i-U:** suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing and rearward facing.
- i-UF:** only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing.
- X:** seat is not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.
  
- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

**!** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## Advice

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could make it unstable.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a "forward facing" child seat.

For this, move the seat forward and, if necessary, straighten its backrest too.

For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

### Children in front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the air bag is deployed.

### Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle under the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within the reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

## Mechanical child lock

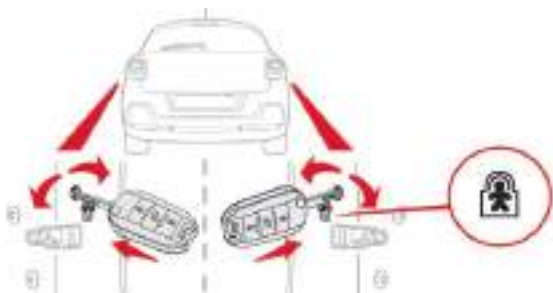


Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a mark on the bodywork.

## Locking



☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

## Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:

- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

**!** Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

## Electric child lock



Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.

## Activation



☞ With the ignition on, press this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. This indicator lamp remains on all the time that the child lock is activated. It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.

## Deactivation

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm deactivation.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

**!** Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child locks.  
Have them checked by CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.  
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.  
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

## Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

## Important!

**!** Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.): Risk of fire!

**!** Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

## Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. Under no circumstances exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## In case of towing

**!** Driving with a tow places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

### Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

**i** Please respect the maximum towable weights.

### Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant. As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

**!** **New vehicle**  
Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 600 miles (1,000 kilometres).

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

**i** For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

**i** If the ambient temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

## Anti-theft protection Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

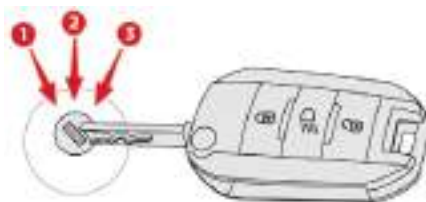
If the system fails, as reported by a message, the engine will not start.

Contact the CITROËN dealer.

**!** For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

## Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

### Key starter



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: inserting and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

### Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

**i** Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Starting the engine

Parking brake applied:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox** in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, in mode **N** or **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.
- ☞ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**I** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**I** In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very extreme wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before starting the vehicle.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running in idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

**I** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

**I** When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

## Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc.

**i** For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** **Key left in**

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

### Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the clutch pedal down fully.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in **P** or **N** mode.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal down fully.



- ☞ Briefly press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

For **diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, the engine will only start once the preheater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the **"START/STOP"** button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal pressed down fully until the warning lamp goes off and not press the **"START/STOP"** button again until the engine is fully running.

or

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal pressed down fully until the warning lamp goes off and not press the **"START/STOP"** button again until the engine is fully running.

**i** The presence of the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting" section.

**!** If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed on the instrument panel. In some circumstances, you will need to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column. A message will notify you if this is necessary.

**!** As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in **P** or **N** mode.



- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

**i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

**!** Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Switching the ignition on (without starting)



With the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on. This also allows the accessories to be used (for example: audio system, lighting, etc.).



- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

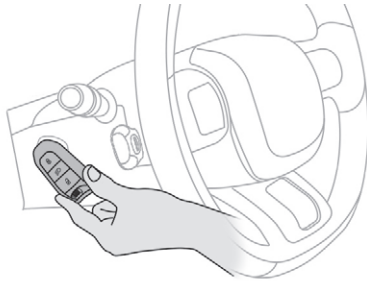
☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

**i** With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

## Key not detected

### Emergency starting

There is an emergency reader on the steering column to allow the engine start, when the system doesn't detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery of the electronic key is used.



- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, select position **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button. The engine starts.

### Back-up switch off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the **"START/STOP"** button for about five seconds.
- In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Emergency switch-off



In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

Press the **"START/STOP"** button for about five seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

## Parking brake

### Locking



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

### Unlocking



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.



Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.



When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to position **P** (automatic gearbox).  
For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

## 5-speed manual gearbox

### Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Press the clutch pedal fully down.
- ☞ Move the gear lever fully to the right then pull it back.



Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.



As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

Six-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

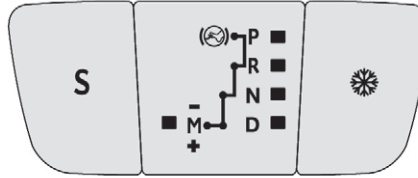
Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation with electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic driving style and a **snow** programme to make driving easier when grip is poor.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.



1. Gear selector.
2. "S" (sport) button.
3. "❄" (snow) button.
4. Gear selector positions graphic.

## Gear selector positions



- P.** Parking.
  - The vehicle is stationary, parking brake on or off.
  - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
  - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
  - The vehicle is stationary, parking brake on.
  - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M + / -.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.
  - ☞ Push backwards to shift up a gear.
  - or
  - ☞ Push forwards to shift down a gear.

## Displays on the instrument panel



When you move the selector to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P.** Parking.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
- D.** Drive (automatic driving).
- S.** **Sport** programme.
- ❄.** **Snow** programme.
- 1 2 3 4 5 6.** Gears engaged during manual operation.
- .** Invalid value in manual mode.

## Foot on brake



- ☞ Press the brake pedal when this indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. starting the engine).



## Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Start the engine.

If these conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate. If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and life of the engine and gearbox.

**!** When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. Do not leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action needed from the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

**!** Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving. Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

### Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **S**, after starting the engine. The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



**S** appears in the instrument panel.

## Snow programme "❄"

- ☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine. The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads. This programme improves starting and handling when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

## Return to standard automatic operation

- ☞ At any time, press the selected button again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

## Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



**D** disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed. It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox engages first gear automatically. The sport and snow programmes are inactive in manual operation.

## Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral. In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

**i** If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.

- ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears. When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

## Operating fault



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, associated with an audible signal and a message on the screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3<sup>rd</sup> gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

- !** There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
  - if you force the movement of the selector from the **P** position to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), put the selector in the **N** position and apply the parking brake.

- !** If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)  
This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Depending on the driving situation and the equipment of your vehicle, the system can recommend you to skip one (or several) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears. Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.

This function cannot be deactivated.

- i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

On some BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, in certain driving conditions the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start). In this case, **N** is displayed on the instrument panel.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears on the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

- i** The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

- i** On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

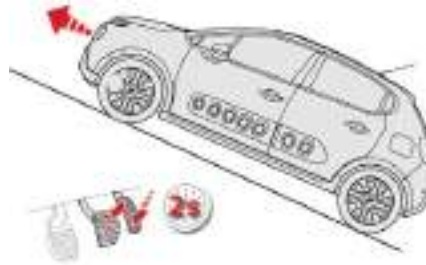
## Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. It is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

**!** Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp lights up constantly on the instrument panel.

**!** The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its function.



**Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, it will briefly stop the vehicle from rolling back when you release the brake pedal.**

With a manual gearbox, if you are in first gear or in neutral.

With an automatic gearbox, if you are in **D** or **M**.



**Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.**

## Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

## Going into engine STOP mode



With a **manual gearbox**, vehicle stationary, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal.



With an **automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.



**Time counter in Stop & Start**  
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.



For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

The Stop & Start does not affect the operation of vehicle systems such as braking, power steering, etc.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

## Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature, etc.) where it is necessary to ensure control of the system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode



With a **manual gearbox**, this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and the engine restarts automatically when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal.



With an **automatic gearbox**, this warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.

### Special case: START goes off automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h),

- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, adjustment of the air conditioning, etc.) where it is needed for control of a system or of the vehicle.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

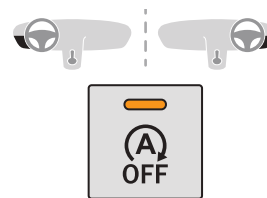
**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation/Reactivation

In certain circumstances (e.g. the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment), it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on. If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts. The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

## With the button on the dashboard



☞ Press this button. Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of the button's indicator lamp and the display of a message.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp goes off and a message is displayed.

### ! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



**! Driving on flooded roads**

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the associated section.

## Recognition of speed limit and advice signs

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

## Malfunction

In the event of a fault with the system, the button's indicator lamp flashes for a few moments, then remains on.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the engine may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

You must switch off the ignition and start the engine again.

**!** The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.

It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.

For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

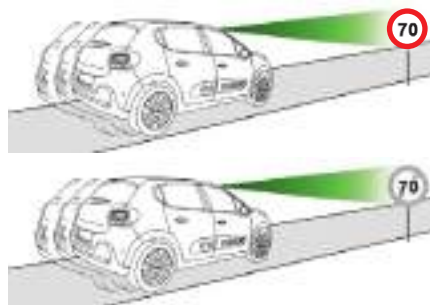
**!** The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic. It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**i** To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

## Principles



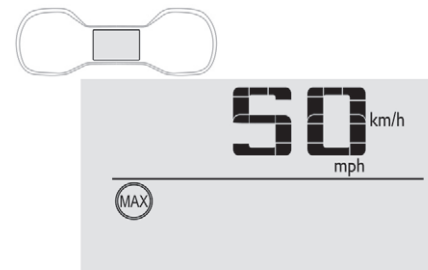
Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.

The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation system mapping.

## Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

## Display on the instrument panel



The system is activated: "MAX" is displayed in the instrument panel.

The information associated with speed limit recognition is displayed after the trip computer data.

To display it:

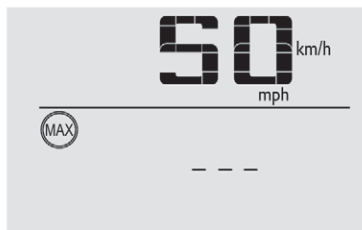


☞ Press this button, located at the edge of the wiper control stalk.

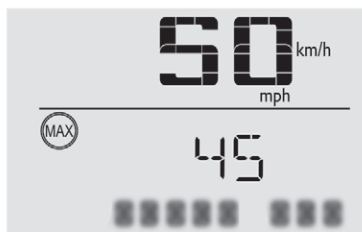


☞ Press the knob on the steering wheel.





The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value detected, accompanied by a message.



The driver can adjust the vehicle's speed according to the information given by the system.

A message is displayed and "MEM" flashes in the display: **speed limiter or cruise control** active, the system suggests a speed setting.

**i** You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

## Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,

- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

## Memorising the speed setting

This memorisation is in addition to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.



The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button for the speed limiter and the cruise control.

This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

**i** For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

## Display on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed of the vehicle.
6. Current speed setting.

## Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.



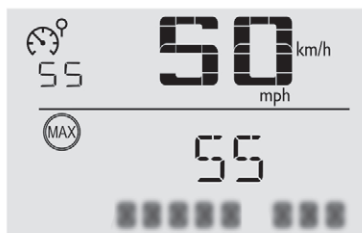
On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit and a message offering to make it a new speed setting. **"MEM"** flashes in the screen for a few seconds on the display.

**i** If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the recognition system, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.

**MEM**

☞ Make an **initial** press on this button to request saving of the speed suggested.

A message asks you to confirm the request with a second press.

**MEM**

☞ Press this button **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the standard display.

## Speed limiter



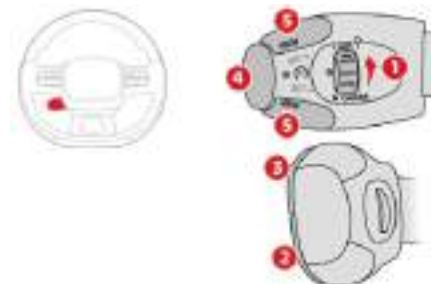
System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

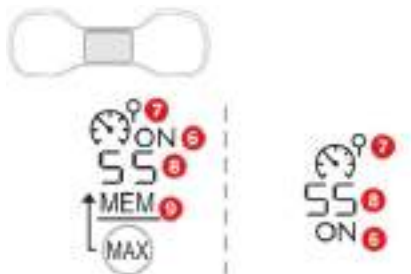
## Steering mounted controls



1. Selecting speed limiter mode.
2. Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Increasing the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Pause.
5. Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

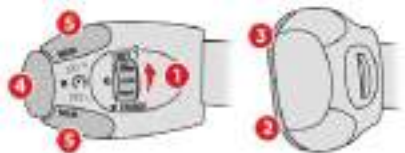
For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / off indicator.
7. Speed limiter mode selected.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

## Switching on



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the LIMIT position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

## Adjusting the speed setting

To modify the speed setting:

- ☞ in increments of + or - 1 mph (km/h), briefly press button **2** or **3** repeatedly,
- ☞ continuously, in increments of +/- 3 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,

- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed speed limit, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



- !** On a steep downhill incline or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not keep the vehicle below the set speed limit.

When the speed limit is exceeded without any action from the driver, an audible signal completes the alert.

Once the vehicle slows down to the required setting, the speed limiter is active again: the speed setting is displayed continuously.



## Switching off

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to **0**: the speed limiter information disappears.

## Malfunction

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

## Cruise control



System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

**i** The cruise control is **switched on** manually.

It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:

- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of third gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

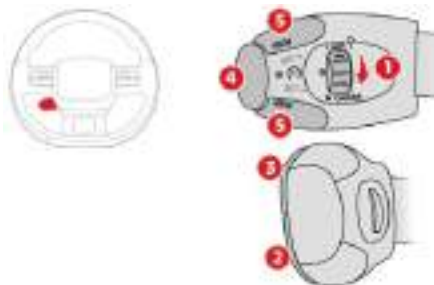
Cruise control remains active after changing gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

**i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

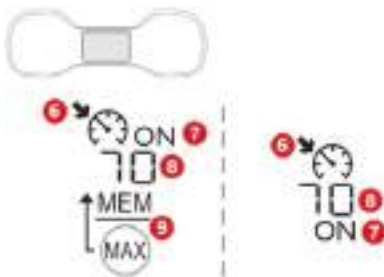
**!** The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.



1. Selection of cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
4. Pause / Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

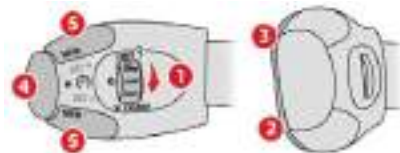
For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control selection indication.
7. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

## Switching on



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the CRUISE position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- ☞ To enable the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. You can release the accelerator pedal.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 interrupts operation of the system (pause).



- ☞ Pressing button 4 again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).



## Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

**!** As a precautionary measure, the selected cruise speed setting should be close to your vehicle's current speed, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in increments of +/- 3 mph (5 km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,

- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal. Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



**!** When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

## Switching off

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to **0**: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

## Malfunction

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** Use the cruise control only when you are able to travel at an even speed for a certain period of time and at a suitable distance from other vehicles.

Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.).

In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

**!** The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

## Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake



This system is a driving aid and it includes three functions.

**Collision Risk Alert:** it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

**Intelligent emergency braking assistance:** it completes the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.

**Active Safety Brake:** it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

**If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.**

### Activation and operating conditions

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumpers.



The system is active from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h). It takes account of:

- registered vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

**!** This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



**i** As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a sense of deceleration.

## Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended:

- when towing a trailer,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling stand in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

**!** It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay alert and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

## Collision Risk Alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



**Level 1:** visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.  
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



**Level 2:** visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.  
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operating conditions of the vehicle (on a curve, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the relevant moment.

**i** Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.  
**Important:** the level 1 alert is never displayed when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

## Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.

The current threshold can be modified via the touch screen's **Vehicle / Driving** menu.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

## Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Using a radar and a camera, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the radar and the camera have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.



**Important:** if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

**i** The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted depending on the driving actions of the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or actions on the accelerator pedal.

**i** Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

**!** If automatic emergency braking is not activated, you are alerted by the fixed display of this warning lamp accompanied by a message. With an automatic gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

## Specific conditions for operation

The vehicle's speed must be between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

The vehicle's speed must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stopped vehicle is detected. The vehicle's speed must not exceed 35 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.

The ESC system must not be defective. The CDS must not be deactivated.

All passenger seatbelts must be fastened. Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

**!** After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

This system can be deactivated or activated via the touch screen's **Vehicle / Driving** menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

## Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Check that the sensor (camera) is not covered by dirt, mud, frost, snow, etc.

If the fault persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

**i** The camera may be disrupted or not work in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- obstruction of the camera (mud, frost, snow, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

**i** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

## Fatigue detection system

It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

Depending on version, the function either has the "Driving time warning" only, or this combined with the "Fatigue detection system".



The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

## Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

For more information on the menu, refer to the part covering your screen in the "Dashboard instruments" section.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Driving time warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



Pensez à faire une pause

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

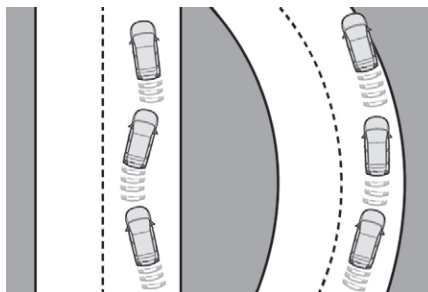
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

**i** As soon as the vehicle's speed drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. Driving time monitoring resumes when the vehicle travels at above 40 mph (65 km/h).

## Fatigue detection system

Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Fatigue detection system".



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h))



Soyez vigilant

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "**Be careful!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

**i** In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, masked (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

## Lane Departure Warning System

System which uses a camera to recognise solid or broken lines and detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the road.

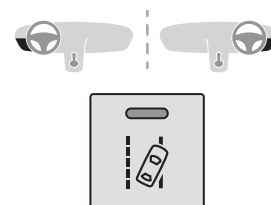
To provide safe driving, the camera analyses the image then, if the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 35 mph (60 km/h), triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



**!** This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Activation / Deactivation



This function can be activated and deactivated via this button.

The button's indicator lamp indicates the status of the function:

- On: the function is activated.
- Off: the function is deactivated.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Detection



If an unexpected change of direction is detected, you are alerted by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel and an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.



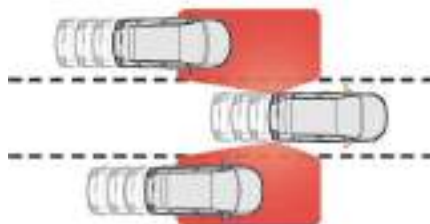
In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds then switches off.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

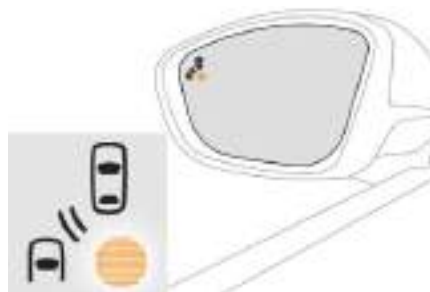
**D**etection may be disrupted:

- if the markings on the road are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the road and the road surface,
- if the windscreen is dirty,
- in certain weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

## Blind Spot Monitoring System



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,

- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

**!** This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the vehicle configuration menu.



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots. The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

To deactivate the system, go to the vehicle configuration menu again. The indicator lamp goes off.

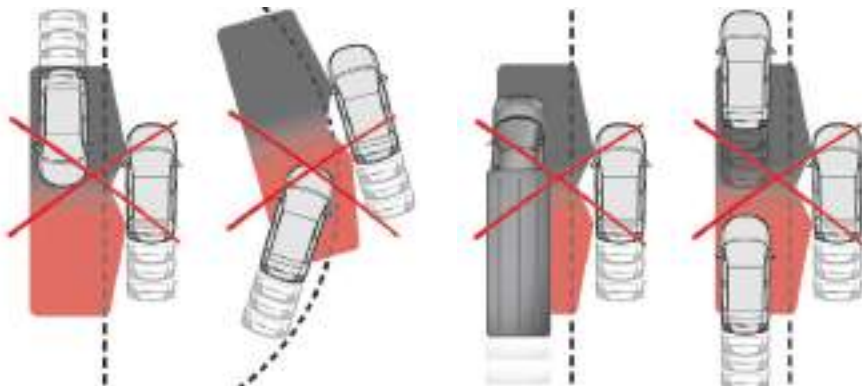
**i** The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

## Operation

The alert is given by a warning lamp that comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, cycle – is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 85 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- traffic is flowing normally,
- when overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- oncoming traffic,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

## Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds on the instrument panel, the Service warning lamp comes on and a message is displayed.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

- i** The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).  
In particular, driving on a wet surface or the transition from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. the presence of water droplets in the blind spot is interpreted as a vehicle).  
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.  
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

- i** **High pressure jet wash**  
When washing your vehicle, keep the nozzle at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

## Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (examples: pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.  
Certain types of obstacle (examples: post, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

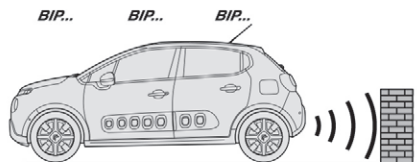
- !** This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.  
This is confirmed by an audible signal.



The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

## Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

## Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

## Deactivation/Activation

The system is activated and deactivated from the vehicle configuration menu.

- The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

## Operating fault

- If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on, with a message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

- In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

- High pressure jet wash**  
When washing your vehicle, keep the nozzle at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

## Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed on the touch screen.

**i** The reversing camera function may be supplemented with parking sensors.

**!** The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle (the difference corresponds to the width of your vehicle with the mirrors).

The red line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The turquoise blue curves represent the maximum turning circle.

It is normal to see part of the number plate displayed at the bottom of the screen.

**!** Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

**i** Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

**i** **High pressure jet washing**  
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the nozzle within 30 cm of the camera lens.

## Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

**!** The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressure (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

**i** The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **!** Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

### **i** Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

## Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by continuous illumination of the lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
  - ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In case of a puncture, use the temporary tyre repair kit or the spare wheel (if equipped).



The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

## Reset

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The system must be reset with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:

- via the vehicle configuration menu for vehicles fitted with a screen,
- via the instrument panel display or via the button on the dashboard for vehicles without a screen.
- via the instrument panel display for vehicles without a screen.

## Touch screen



The function is reset via the **Vehicle / Driving** menu.

- ☞ In the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, select the "Driving functions" tab.
  - ☞ In the page, select the "**Under-inflation reset**" function.
  - ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.
- A message is displayed and an audible signal goes off to confirm the reset operation.

## Monochrome screen C



The function is reset via the screen's "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu.

- ☞ Select the "**Define the vehicle parameters**" menu.
  - ☞ Select the "**Comfort**" menu.
  - ☞ Select the "**Tyre inflation**" menu.
  - ☞ Select the "**Reset**" function.
  - ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.
- An audible signal confirms the reset operation.

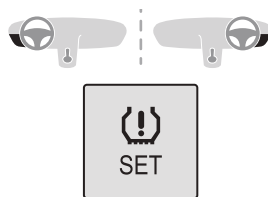
## Instrument panel display screen

- ☞ Press this button briefly to go to the menu.
- SET 000**
- ☞ Select the corresponding item then confirm.

Reinitialisation is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.

A deep tone audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation has not been done.

## Dashboard button



- ☞ Hold this button down.
- Reset is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.
- A deep tone audible signal indicates that the reset operation has not been done.

## Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning light accompanied by illumination of the Service warning light indicates a fault in the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

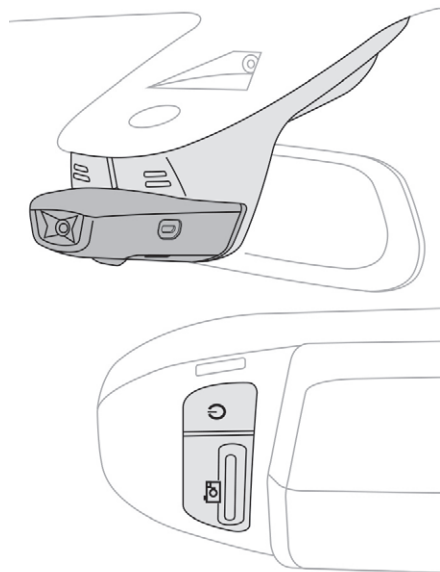
In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer provided.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** After carrying out any work on the system, the pressure of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

## CITROËN ConnectedCAM™

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)



With this wireless camera, installed at the top of the windscreen, you can:

- take photos and videos by pressing the dedicated control,
- send the vehicle's GPS coordinates to a smartphone,

- record secure videos: a sensor (accelerometer) automatically activates the camera in the event of an impact,
- share photos and videos by email, text and on social media via the "CITROËN ConnectedCAM™" application on a smartphone.

Since the use of the CITROËN ConnectedCAM™ is under your control and your responsibility, you must ensure that you enforce personal data protection regulations (images of other people, vehicle registration plates, protected buildings, etc.), the highway code and road safety regulations. Verify beforehand that your insurance company accepts films collected by the CITROËN ConnectedCAM™ as evidence.

### Operation

To use all camera functions, you must perform the following operations:

- ☞ download the "**CITROËN ConnectedCAM™**" application onto a smartphone,
- ☞ pair the smartphone with the camera following the instructions given by the application.

Pairing is required for the initial connection only. It will then be automatic.  
The default pairing code is: ConnectedCAM.

### Switching on



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera on.  
The indicator lamp comes on.

When the camera is switched on, video recording is automatic and permanent.

### Switching off



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera off.  
The indicator lamp goes off.

If you switch the camera off manually, it will remain off even after the vehicle is restarted and will have to be switched on manually.

### Managing photos and videos



- ☞ Press this button briefly to take a photo.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.

## Driving



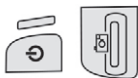
- Press and hold this button to record a video.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.

Thanks to the "**CITROËN ConnectedCAM™**" application, you can then automatically and immediately share your photos and videos on social networks or by email.

A "micro USB" port also allows you to save data from the camera onto other media such as computers, tablets, etc.

## Resetting the system



Pressing and holding these two buttons simultaneously resets the system.

This action clears all the data recorded on the camera and resets the camera's default pairing code.

**!** For safety reasons, the driver must not use the CITROËN ConnectedCAM™ application accessible from a smartphone while driving. All actions requiring sustained attention must be performed while the vehicle is stationary.

## Operating fault



When a system fault occurs, the warning lamp button flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



# FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ  
LUBRICANTS



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

**Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.**

## Fuel tank

### Tank capacity:

- Petrol: approximately 45 litres.
- Diesel: approximately 42 or 50 litres (depending on version).

**!** If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

## Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible warning, a message and the last bar of the fuel gauge flashes in red.

When it first comes on, **about 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops and approaches "0".

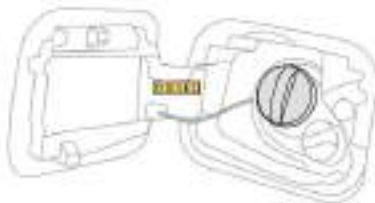
Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

**i** For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Refilling

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.



To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ Open the filler flap.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.

- ☞ Insert the key in the cap then turn it to the left, or turn the cap manually to the left (depending on version).



- ☞ Remove the cap and place it on its support (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Hold it in this position throughout the filling operation.

Once you have finished refuelling:

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.



- ☞ Turn the key to the right then remove it from the cap, or turn the cap manually to the right (depending on version).
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

**If you are filling your tank to the top, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off; this could cause malfunctions.**

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.**

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

**!** If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

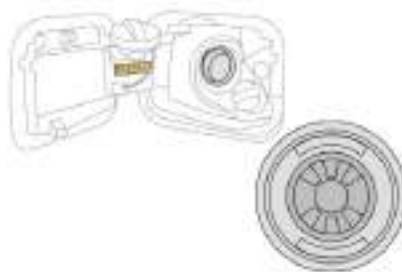
## Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country of sale.)  
Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

### Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not continue trying but introduce a diesel filler nozzle instead.**

**i** It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

To ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### **i** Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

## Compatibility of fuels

### Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

- E5** Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.
- E10**

**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

### Fuel used for Diesel engines

The diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

- B7** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- B10** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

- XTL** Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

- B20** The use of B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 is possible with your Diesel engine. However, this

- B30** use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

**i** The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

### Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type diesel fuels could entail an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

### Travelling abroad

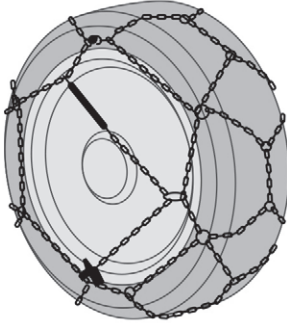
Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact the dealer.

## Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.



**!** The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised .

## Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and, if necessary, put wheel chocks against the wheels to prevent your vehicle from sliding.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few seconds, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Only use the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheels fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain types
185/65 R15	Maximum 9 mm link
195/65 R15	
205/55 R16	
205/50 R17	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

**i** We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN tow-bars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the tow-bar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the tow-bar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

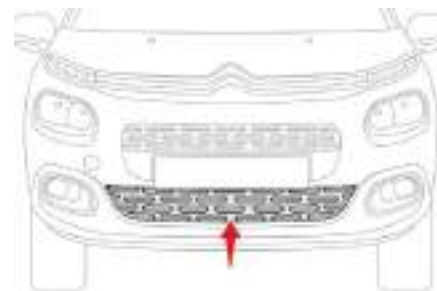
**!** Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Please respect the maximum authorised towable weights, indicated on the registration certificate or in your vehicle's technical data.

**i** For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

## Blanking plug

When towing, it is essential to remove the blanking plug if your vehicle is equipped with it.



It is behind the lower air intake grille. To have it removed, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

## Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

**i** If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

## Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,

- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

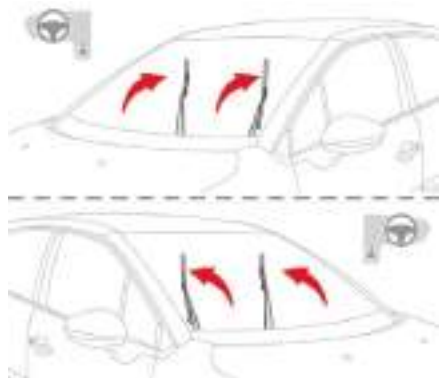
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

**!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Changing a wiper blade

### Before removing a front wiper



☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

or

☞ A minute after switching off the ignition, straighten the arms manually.

### Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

### Refitting

- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

### After refitting a front wiper

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper lever again to park the wiper blades.

! Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or in a qualified workshop.

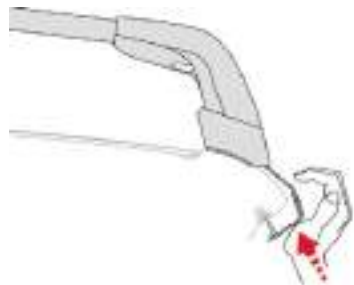
### Roof bars

! For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.

Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the roof bars.



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.



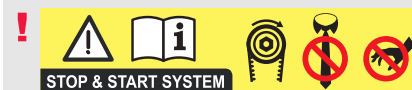
The roof bars mountings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.

### ! Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Lash the load securely and fit a warning flag if it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds (the stability of the vehicle may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

**i** Maximum load distributed across the roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm: **70 kg**.  
As this value can be changed, please verify the maximum load mentioned in the note delivered with the roof bars.  
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the mountings on the vehicle.  
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

## Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

**!** When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.  
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

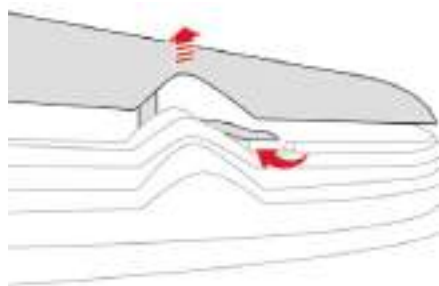
**!** **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

## Opening

- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞ Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the lever and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## Closing

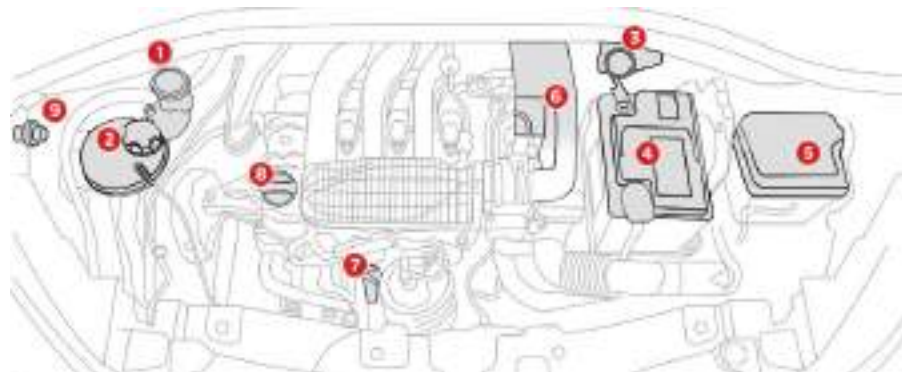
- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

**!** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.



## Engines

### Petrol

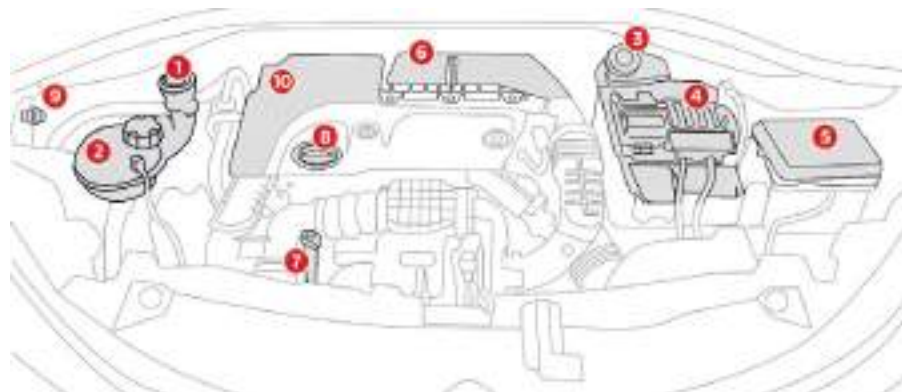


These engines are examples provided as a guide.

The locations of the dipstick and engine oil filler cap may vary.

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.
10. Priming pump\*.

### Diesel



**!** The diesel circuit is under very high pressure.  
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

\* Depending on engine.

## Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**!** Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of in the containers reserved for this purpose.

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

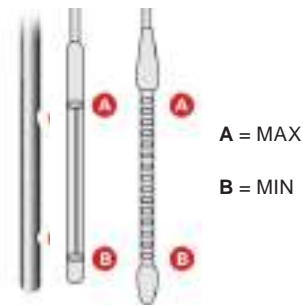
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

## Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



- If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.
- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.


- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

**i** After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level

 The fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Changing the coolant

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine cool.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it. If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up. A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

## Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

## Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

## Diesel fuel additive level (diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

## Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Level of AdBlue

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.

For more information on **AdBlue®** and the **SCR** system, and in particular topping it up, refer to the corresponding section.

## Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

**i** For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary.**

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

## Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed. Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

## Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the constant illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by an alert message.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and particularly on the level of diesel additive, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

## Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the new Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

### SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the oxides of nitrogen (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is contained in a special tank holding about 15 litres. Its capacity allows a driving range of around 11,000 miles (18,000 km). An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

**!** Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is defective, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

### **i** Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

## Topping up with AdBlue®

### Precautions for use

The AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

**!** Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® liquid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

**!** Never dilute AdBlue® with water.  
Never pour AdBlue® into the diesel fuel tank.



Containers are available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

### Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. Bottles should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

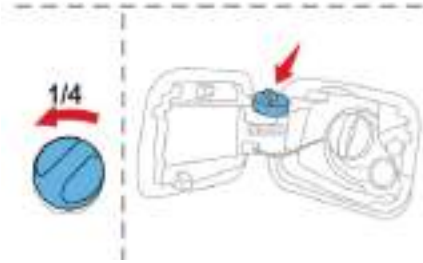
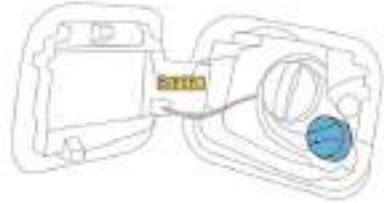
**!** Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

### Procedure

Before topping up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top up to be carried out.

### Park the vehicle

- ☞ Switch off the ignition to stop the engine and remove the key from the switch.
- or
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to stop the engine.



### Open the filler

- ☞ When the vehicle is unlocked, open the filler flap.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Take the blue cap away.

### Topping up



- ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container. After first checking the **use-by date**, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

**!** **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 4 litres and no more than 10 litres.

- ☞ After emptying the container, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

**!** If any fluid is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

### Refit the filler cap

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it a 4th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.

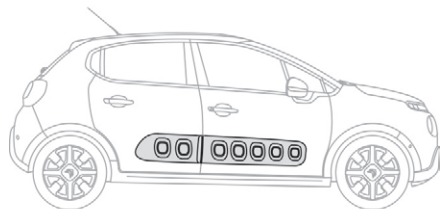
**!** **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.** Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.



## Protections AIRBUMP®

Implemented in TPU (Thermoplastic polyurethane) and enclosing air bubbles, they act as shock absorbers.

Located on the sides of your vehicle, they protect the bodywork by dampening the small impacts of everyday life: parking pillars, door opening, scratches, etc.



### **i** Maintenance of AIRBUMP®

The AIRBUMP® do not require any special maintenance.

They are simply cleaned using water or one of the products available in the CITROËN network.

To guarantee proper ageing of the AIRBUMP®, do not use polish.

## Running out of fuel (diesel)

On vehicles fitted with diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

**i** For more information on **Misfuel prevention (diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

## BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

## Other HDi engines

(except BlueHDi version)

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the engine bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover to access the priming pump.



- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the style cover in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet again.

## Temporary puncture repair kit

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

**i** The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

**i** **Under-inflation detection**  
After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.  
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

## Kit contents



1. 12 V compressor, with built-in pressure gauge.
2. Bottle of sealant, with built-in hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

**!** The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

**!** Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Repair procedure

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

**!** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



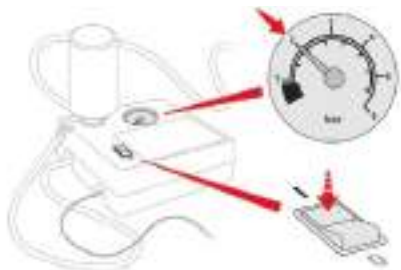
- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



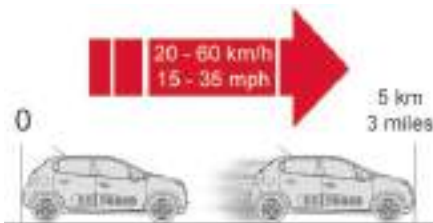
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to the position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the hose from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

**!** If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit.



- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

**!** Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date is marked on the bottle. After use, do not discard the bottle by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Don't forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

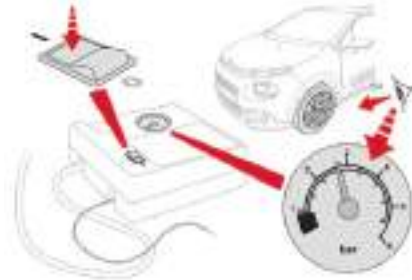
## Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

**i** You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures

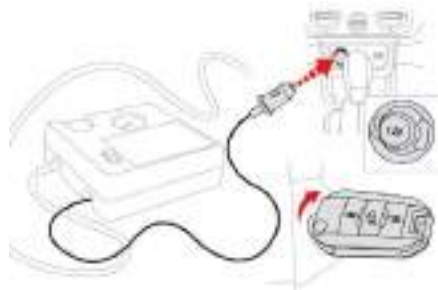
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to the position "I" and adjust the pressure as shown on the vehicle tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button on the compressor hose by the valve connector.
- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.



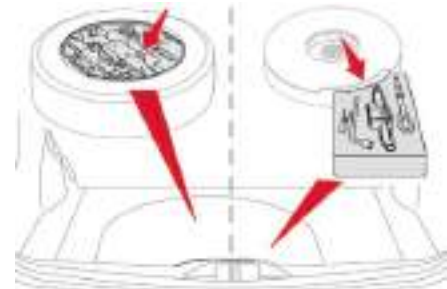
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

**!** Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

### Access to the tools



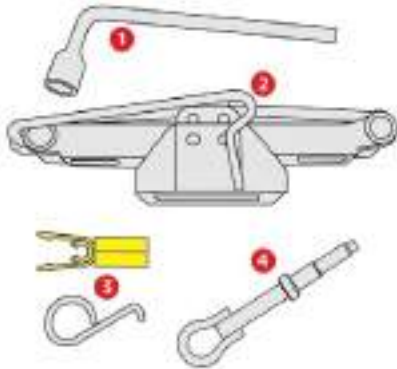
The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the storage box containing the tools.

In the event of a breakdown

## List of tools



1. Wheel wrench.  
For removing the hub cap and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integrated crank.  
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.  
For removal of the alloy wheel bolt covers or the central bolt cover (depending on version).
4. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the associated section.

**!** All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.  
Do not use them for any other purposes.

**!** The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.  
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.  
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.  
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.  
The jack does not require any maintenance.

## Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is located in the boot under the floor.

Depending on engine, the spare wheel is a standard wheel or the space-saver type (BlueHDi).

## Taking out the wheel

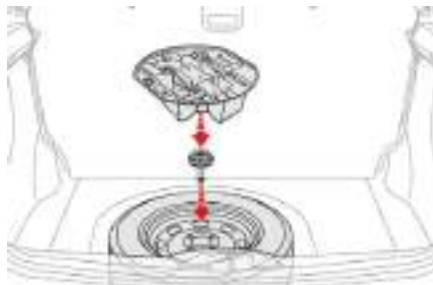


- ☞ Unclip the tool storage box (standard spare wheel).
- ☞ Unscrew the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fixing parts (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

## Putting the wheel back in place



- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Give the bolt a few turns to loosen it.
- ☞ Position the fixing parts (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Clip the tool storage box back into place (standard spare wheel).

**i** If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

## Removing a wheel

**!** **Parking the vehicle**  
 Stop the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.  
 Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear \* so as to block the wheels.  
 Check that the parking brake warning light illuminates steadily in the instrument panel.  
 The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.  
 Make sure that the jack is correctly positioned at one of the vehicle's jacking points.  
 Incorrect use of the jack could cause the vehicle to collapse.  
 Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

\* position **P** for the automatic gearbox

**i** **Wheel with wheel trim**  
**When removing the wheel**, first remove the wheel trim using wheelbrace 1 by pulling at the valve aperture.  
**When refitting the wheel**, after tightening the wheel bolts, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

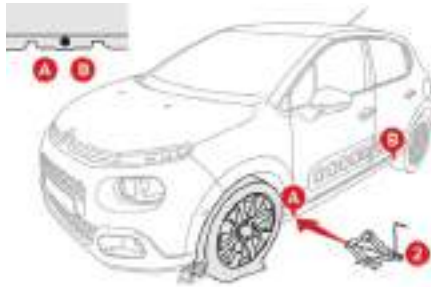
## List of operations



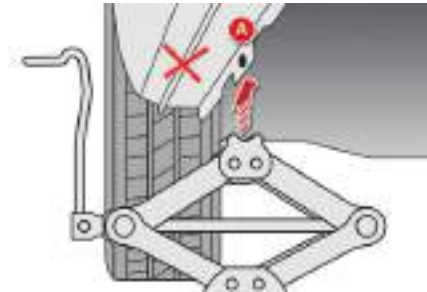
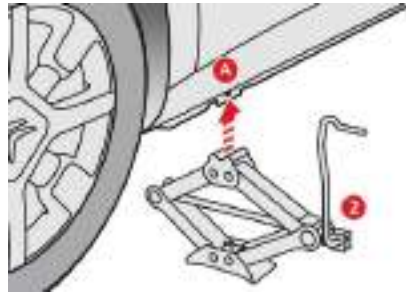
- ☞ Remove each wheel bolt cover using tool **3** (depending on version).
- ☞ Loosen the bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.

In the event of a breakdown

**!** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – Risk of injury!  
Take care to place the jack only at the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the jack head is centred at the contact point on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing – Risk of injury!



- ☞ Place the foot of jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

### **I** Stowing the damaged wheel

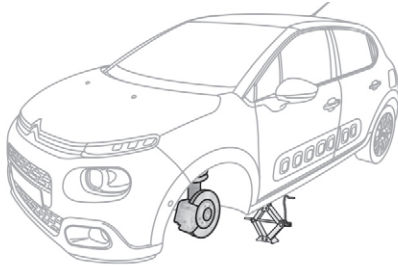
The damaged wheel can be stowed under the floor, in the standard spare wheel housing.

To stow an alloy wheel, first remove the hub cap from the middle of the wheel so that the fastening device (nut and bolt) can be put in place.

In the case of a "space-saver" type spare wheel, the damaged wheel cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be stowed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.



## Fitting a wheel



### **F** Fastening the spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

### **!** After changing a wheel

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with the "space-saver" type spare wheel fitted. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked. Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

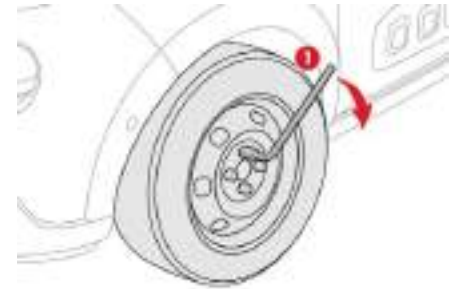
## List of operations



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack 2 and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.
- ☞ Refit the wheel bolt cover (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Stow the tools in their box.

## Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
  - ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
  - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
  - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
  - ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.  
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

! **Light emitting diodes (LED)**  
For the replacement of this type of bulbs, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Halogen bulbs**  
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution!  
Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **Opening of bonnet / Access to bulbs**  
Engine warm, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!  
Take care with objects or clothing that could caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

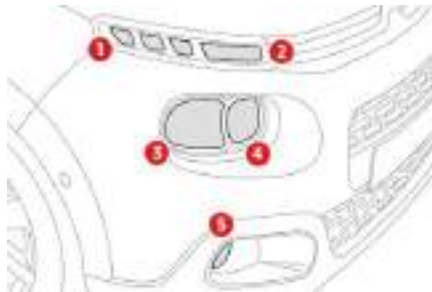
## Front lamps

### Model with halogen headlamps



1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (W21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Foglamps (PSX24W).

## Model with LED lamps



1. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LED).\*
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlights (H7).
4. Main beam headlights (H7).
5. Fog lights (PSX24W).

## Daytime running lamps/sidelamps



- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

\* LED: light emitting diodes.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

## Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Direction indicators

**i** Quicker flashing of the direction indicator light (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

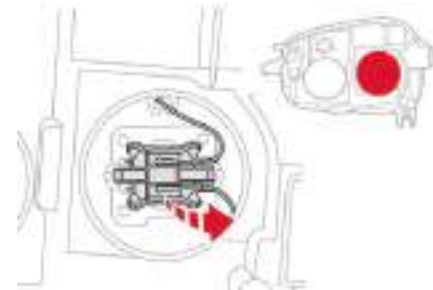


- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

## Dipped beam headlamps

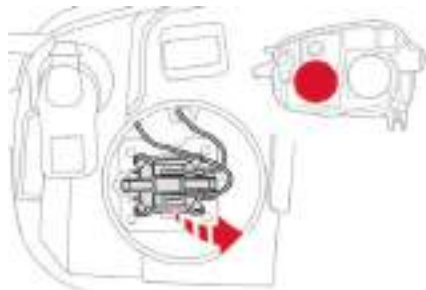


- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, perform the operations in reverse order, **turning the lamp's positioning lug upwards.**

In the event of a breakdown

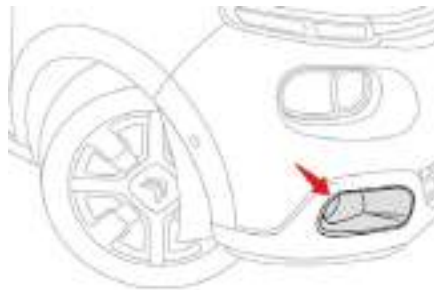
## Main beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

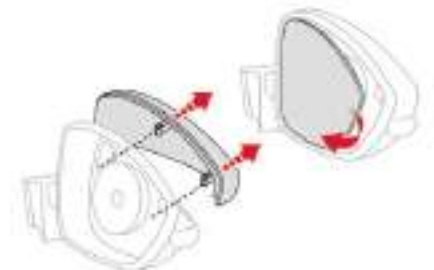
To refit, perform the operations in reverse order, **turning the lamp's positioning lug downwards.**

## Foglamps



For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Integrated flashing indicator side repeaters



- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror glass and its base.

- ☞ Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the glass.
- ☞ Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two fixing clips.



- ☞ Press the central tongue and remove the side repeater.
- ☞ Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty lamp.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

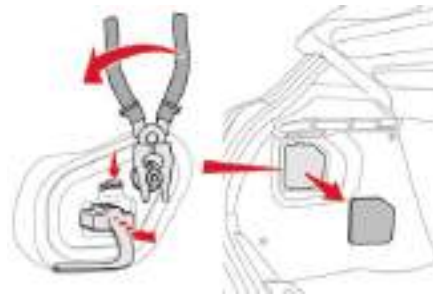
**i** To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Rear lamps



1. Sidelamps (R10W).
2. Brake lamps (P21W).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W).
4. Reversing lamp (P21W) or foglamp (PR21W).

## Changing bulbs

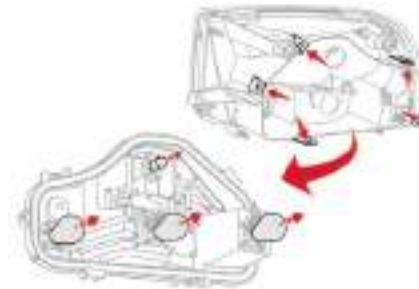


These bulbs are changed from inside the boot.

- ☞ Open the boot.

- ☞ Remove the access cover on the corresponding side trim.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Unscrew the nut and remove it (**ensure it does not fall inside the wing**).
- ☞ Unclip the lamp unit and carefully extract it pulling straight towards you.

A standard pair of pliers or the wheelbrace (depending on equipment) may be necessary to remove the nut.

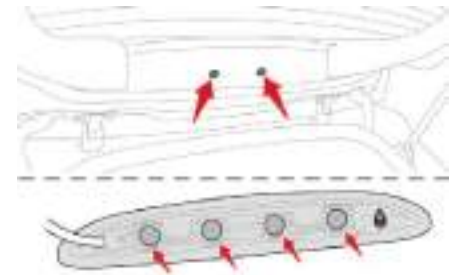


- ☞ Move the maintenance flaps of the bulb holder away and remove it.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and fit a new bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the light.

## Third brake lamp (4 T10 W5W bulbs)

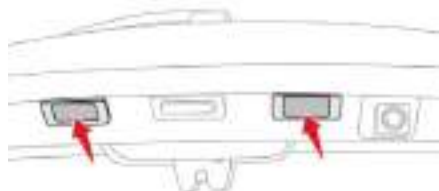


- ☞ Open the boot, unclip the plastic covers.
- ☞ Push the two lugs with a screwdriver.
- ☞ Take the lamp out via the outside of the lid.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder corresponding to the faulty lamp a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, perform these operations in reverse order, verifying that the screenwash fluid nozzle is on the left side.

In the event of a breakdown

## Number plate lamps (W5W)



For easier removal, perform this procedure with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the cut-out located outside the lens.
- ☞ Lift it to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

**!** If changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the silencer – there is a risk of burns!

## Interior lighting Courtesy lamp (W5W)



- ☞ Using a thin, flap tip screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy lamp.
- ☞ Remove the defective bulb and change it.
- ☞ Fit the console back into place around the courtesy lamp and clip it correctly.

## Courtesy lamp with LED

For the replacement of LEDs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Boot (W5W)

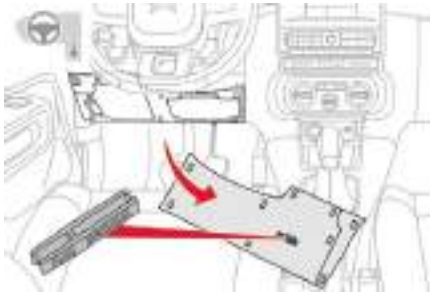


- ☞ Unclip the unit by pushing the base from behind.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- ☞ Put the unit back in place.

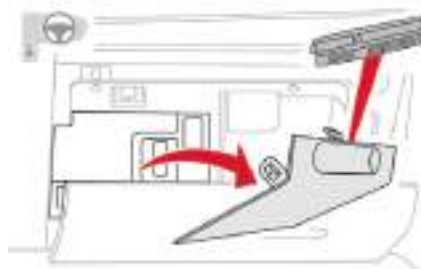
## Changing a fuse

### Access to tooling

The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover.



The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

- ☞ Open the glove box lid.
- ☞ Unclip the fusebox protection cover.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover.

### Changing a fuse

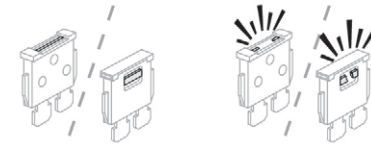
Before changing a fuse, it is necessary to:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers,
- ☞ stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the allocation tables and the diagrams in the following pages,

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



OK

NOK



Tweezers

**!** The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables opposite may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### **i** Installing electrical accessories

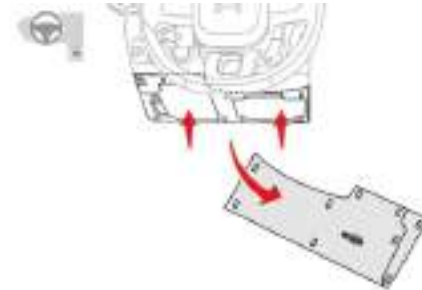
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

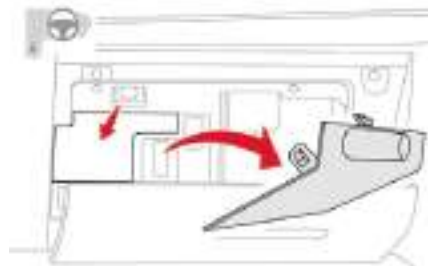
## Fuses in the dashboard

### Access to the fuses



The 2 fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, below the steering wheel.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.



The 2 fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, in the glove box.

- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Unclip the fusebox protection cover.



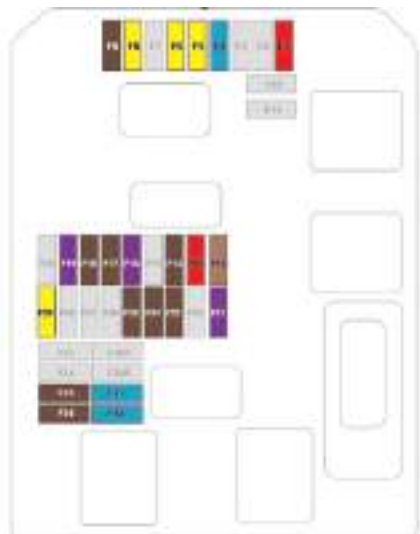
## Upper fusebox



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F29	-	Not used.
F30	30	Rear screen, demisting.
F31	10	Demisting mirrors.
F32	-	Not used.
F33	40	Front electric windows.
F34	40	Rear electric windows.
F35	30	Front heated seats.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.

In the event of a breakdown

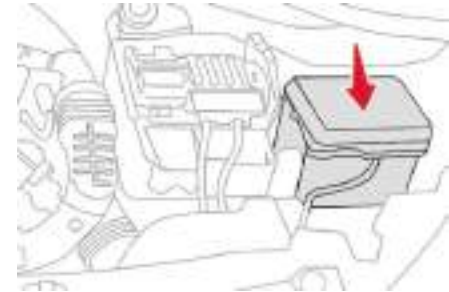
## Lower fusebox



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10	Electrochrome rear view mirror, demisting rear screen, Diesel particle filter, parking sensors, power steering, LPG system, clutch pedal switch, door mirror adjustment.
F10(+) F11(Gnd)	30	Locking/Unlocking for doors (and fuel filler flap (depending on engine)).
F13	10	Rain and light sensor, air conditioning, front camera.
F14	5	Alarm, telematic unit.
F16	3	Automatic gearbox speed selector, brake pedal switch, Stop & Start system.
F17	5	Instrument panel, driving school module.
F18	5	Air conditioning, speed selector position indicator (automatic gearbox).
F19	3	Steering mounted controls.
F21	3	START/STOP switch or button.
F23	5	Seat belts not fastened warning lamps display.
F24	5	Parking sensors, rear camera, telematic screen.
F25	5	Airbag control unit.
F29	20	Telematic radio.
F31	15	Radio (retrofitting).
F32	15	Front 12V socket.

<b>F35</b>	<b>5</b>	Headlamp adjustment, diagnostic socket, additional heating (depending on equipment).
<b>F36</b>	<b>5</b>	Front map reading light.
<b>F4</b>	<b>15</b>	Audible warning.
<b>F6(+) – F5(Gnd)</b>	<b>20</b>	Front and rear screenwash pump.
<b>F8</b>	<b>20</b>	Rear wiper.
<b>F9</b>	<b>5</b>	Front courtesy lamp.

## Engine compartment fuses

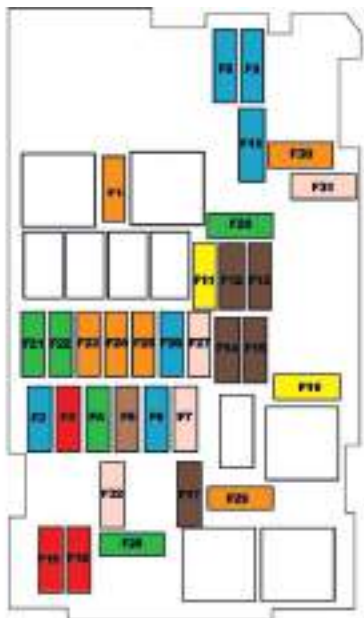


The fusebox is located in the engine compartment near the battery.

### Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

In the event of a breakdown



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40	Air conditioning.
F10	15	Engine management.
F11	20	Engine management.
F12	5	Engine management.
F13	5	Engine management.
F14	5	Battery state of charge unit (depending on engine).
F15	5	Not used.
F16	20	Front foglamp.
F17	5	Engine management.
F18	10	Right hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left hand main beam headlamp.
F2	60	ABS/ESP.
F20	30	Engine management.
F21	30	Starter (depending on engine).
F22	30	Not used.
F23	40	Starter unit (if Stop & Start and depending on engine).
F24	40	Passenger compartment fusebox.
F25	40	Trailer attachment preparation.

<b>F26</b>	<b>15</b>	Automatic gearbox or LPG system.
<b>F27</b>	<b>25</b>	Built-in systems interface (BSI).
<b>F28</b>	<b>30</b>	Diesel emissions control system (AdBlue®).
<b>F29</b>	<b>40</b>	Windscreen wipers.
<b>F3</b>	<b>50</b>	Passenger compartment fusebox.
<b>F30</b>	<b>40</b>	Diesel pre-heater.
<b>F31</b>	<b>80</b>	Additional heater (depending on equipment).
<b>F32</b>	<b>80</b>	Power steering.
<b>F4</b>	<b>30</b>	ABS/ESP.
<b>F5</b>	<b>70</b>	Built-in services interface (BSI).
<b>F6</b>	<b>60</b>	Engine fan group.
<b>F7</b>	<b>80</b>	Built-in services interface (BSI).
<b>F8</b>	<b>15</b>	Engine management.
<b>F9</b>	<b>15</b>	Engine management.

## 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

## General points

### Lead-acid starter batteries

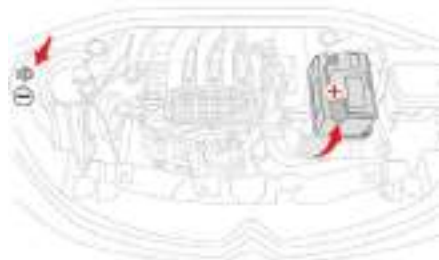


Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

## Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ unlock the bonnet by activating the internal control, then the external control,
- ☞ lift the bonnet, then hold it in place with its prop.

**(+)** Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

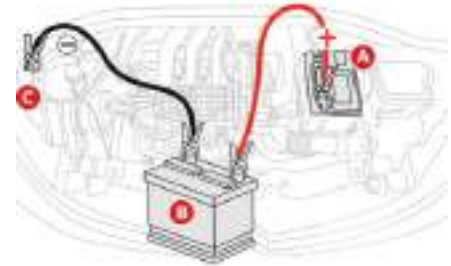
**(-)** Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed on the structure of the front right wing.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

- ! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.  
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.  
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.  
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.  
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).  
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).  
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
  - ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of backup battery **B** or the booster.
  - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
  - ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
  - ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
  - ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine turn.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you plan to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

**!** Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

## Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

In the event of a breakdown

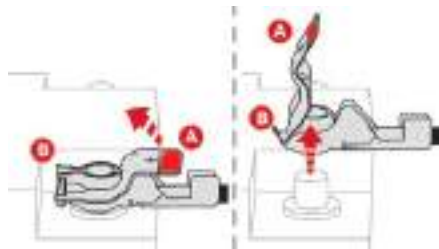
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

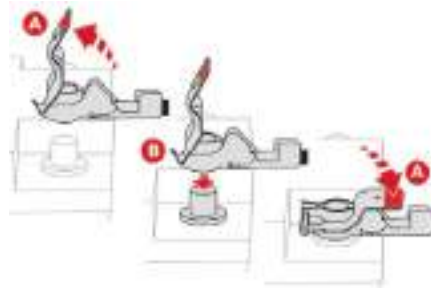
## Quick-release terminal clamp

### Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.

**!** Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

### Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise. However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself initialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).



## Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

### Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

### ! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no more braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved tow bar available etc.

## Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing on its left side.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye completely.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Move the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an automatic gearbox).

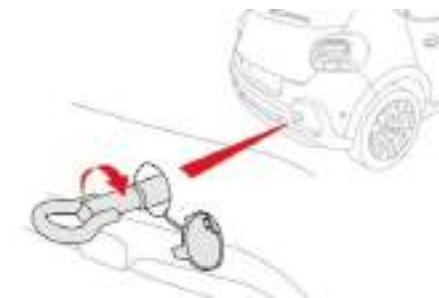
! Failure to follow this instruction may cause damage to some components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition by one notch and release the parking brake.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye completely.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamp on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Characteristics of engines and towed loads

### Engines

The engine specifications (displacement, max. power, max. speed, energy, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, etc.) associated with your vehicle are mentioned in the registration certificate, and in the commercial documents.

These characteristics correspond to the values type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towbar ball (removable, with or without tools).

**GTW:** Gross train weight.

**!** High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

**!** Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

**i** If the ambient temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

## Engines and towed loads – PETROL

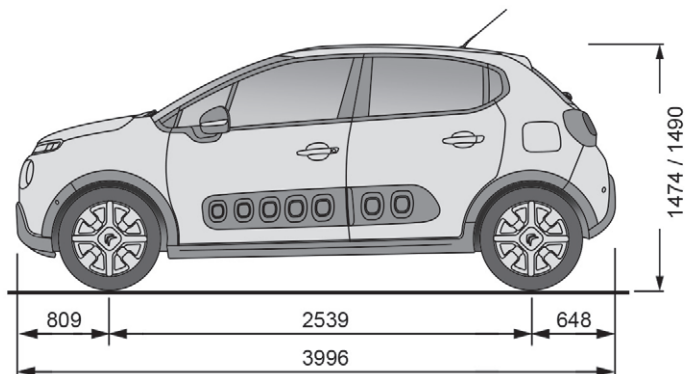
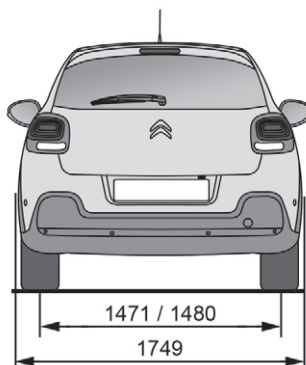
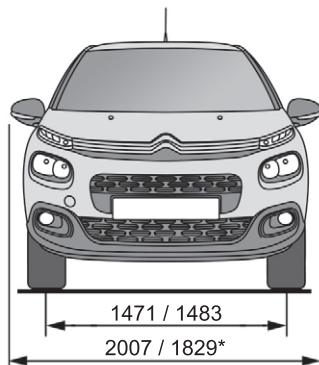
Engine	PureTech 68 BVM	PureTech 82 BVM	PureTech 110 S&S		VTI 115 EAT6
<b>Gearboxes</b>	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)	Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)
<b>Code</b>	EB2FB – MA	EB2F – MA	EB2DT – BE – STTd	EB2DT – AT6III – STTd EB2DTM – AT6III – STTd	EC5F – AT6III
<b>Model codes</b> Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXHMP6/B0 – SXHMP6/A0	SXHMZ6/... B0 – B1 – A0 – B0M – A0M – A0G – A1G – B0G – B1G	SXHNZ6/A0S	SXHNZT/A0S SXHNVT/A0S	SXNFPT/A0
Cylinders volume (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,587
Max power: EU standard (kW)	50	60	81	81	85
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	450	450	600	450	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450	450	450
Recommended nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46	46

## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Engine	BlueHDi 75 S&S BVM	HDI 90	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)	Manual 5-speed (BVM5)
Code	DV6FE – BE – STTd	DV6DM – BE	DV6FD – BE – STTd
Model codes Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXBHW6/... B0S – B1S – A0S	SX9HJC/B0 – SX9HJC/A0	SXBHY6/B0S – SXBHY6/A0S
Cylinders volume (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max power: EU standard (kW)	55	66	73
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	600	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450
Recommended nose weight (kg)	46	46	46

## Dimensions (in mm)

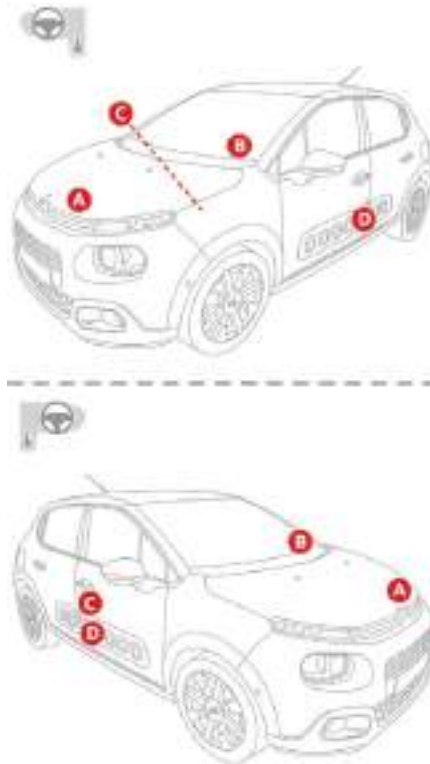
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



\* Mirrors folded in.

## Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and localisation of your vehicle.



### A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.

The number is engraved on the body structure.

### B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

### C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label is affixed to the right-hand door.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

### D. Tyres / paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information about the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

**i** The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

### Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

**!** Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.



Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.





## CITROËN Connect Nav



### GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio – Bluetooth® telephone

<b>Contents</b>	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	25
Media	26
Telephone	28
Configuration	33
Frequently asked questions	37

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.  
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

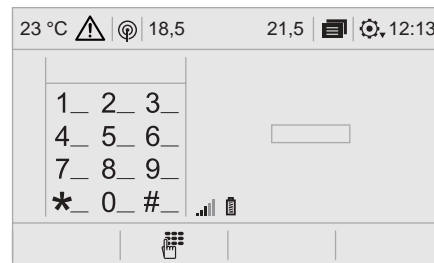
You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.  
Press the cross to go back a level.  
Press "OK" to confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.  
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.  
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

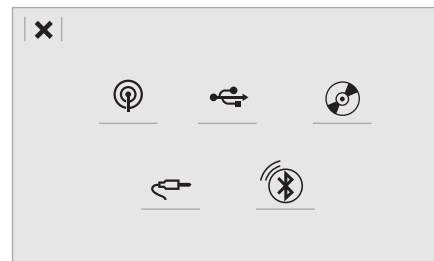
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB\*/AM\* radio stations.
- Key USB.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth\* (streaming).



\* Depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.



### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.



or



Mute / Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

or



Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Decrease volume.



or



**SRC**



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

or

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**SRC**

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

or

**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.



**LIST**

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

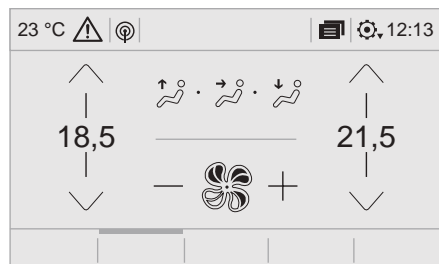
## Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

### Air conditioning



Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



### Connected navigation

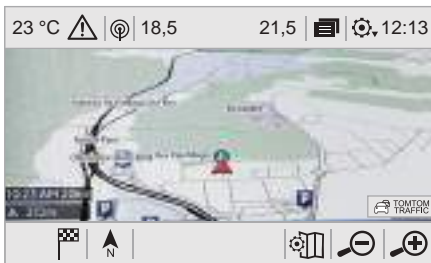


Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

or

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

NAV



### Applications

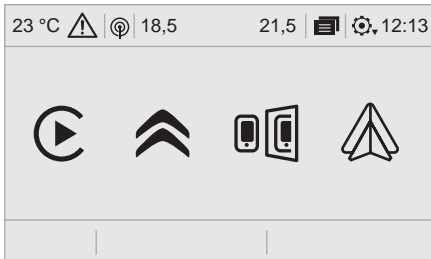


Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.

or

Check the state of the Bluetooth® and

**APPS** Wi-Fi connections.



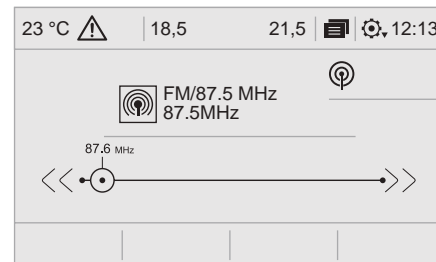
## Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

or

**MEDIA**



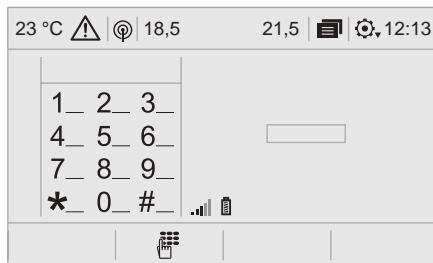
## Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

or

TEL



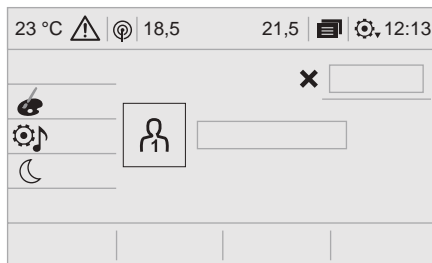
## Configuration



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

or

SETUP



## Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



## Voice commands

### Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

**!** To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version),
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

## First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address", "11 Regent Street, London".**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist", "Madonna".**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller".**

**!** The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to /...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.



## Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



## Global voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Help</b>	<p>There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".</p>
<b>Voice command help</b>	
<b>Navigation help</b>	
<b>Radio help</b>	
<b>Media help</b>	
<b>Telephone help</b>	
<b>Set dialogue mode as &lt;...&gt;</b>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
<b>Select profile &lt;...&gt;</b>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
<b>Yes</b>	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
<b>No</b>	

## "Navigation" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Navigate home</b>	<p>To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".</p>
<b>Navigate to work</b>	
<b>Navigate to preferred address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to contact &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Show nearby POI &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Remaining distance</b>	<p>To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.</p>
<b>Remaining time</b>	
<b>Arrival time</b>	
<b>Stop route guidance</b>	

**i** Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.





 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Tune to channel &lt;...&gt;</b>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
<b>What's playing</b>	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
<b>Play song &lt;...&gt;</b>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
<b>Play artist &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Play album &lt;...&gt;</b>	

**i** Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands

**i** If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Call contact &lt;...&gt;*</b>	<p>To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".</p>
<b>Dial &lt;...&gt;*</b>	
<b>Display contacts*</b>	
<b>Display calls*</b>	
<b>Call (message box   voicemail)*</b>	


## "Text message" voice commands

**i** If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Send text to &lt;...&gt;</b>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p> <p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>
<b>Listen to most recent message*</b>	

 The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

## Navigation

### Choice of a profile

#### To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

**OK** Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

**i** In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take in the list of "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

**i** Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

## To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

## To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

## Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

## To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

**i** A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

## Towards coordinates GPS



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.  
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.  
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

**i** The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Connected navigation

According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

### Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

### Network connection provided by the user



## Connected navigation connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

**Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

### Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

### Network connection provided by the user

#### Connection USB



Connect a USB cable.  
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

#### Connection Bluetooth



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

#### Connection Wi-Fi



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

**i** Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



**i** The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

**i** The principles and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

## Settings specific to connected navigation

**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or  
**NAV**

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- "Guidance to final destination on foot"
- "Authorize sending information"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**

**!** For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: **"Authorize sending information"**.

**i** The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.



## Declaration of "Danger areas"

**!** To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**



Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

## "Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

## Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Applications

### Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

#### APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.

Select your country of residence.



**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

**i** Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

### Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

#### APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

### Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

#### APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

### CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

or

**TEL**

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the primary page.

**APPS**

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The **"MirrorLink™"** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the primary page.

**APPS**

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "MirrorLink™" function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Smartphone connection Android Auto

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menu by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers, is deactivated.

**i** There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Bluetooth connection®

**!** As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

**i** The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

**OK**

## Connection Wi-Fi

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

### APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.

**i** The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

## Connection sharing Wi-Fi

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

### APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

Select the **"Settings"** to change the name of the system network and the password.

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**i** To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

## Manage connections



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

### APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.  
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## OK

**!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.  
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.  
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**i** RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Display text information

**i** The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



## Play TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

## DAB-FM auto tracking

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "Station follow".

**OK**

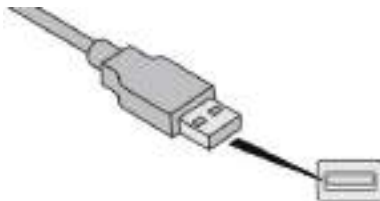
Press "OK".

**i** If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### Port USB



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Socket Auxiliary (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

### CD player

(depending on model / depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).  
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

**i** Activation of the profile; **"Mobile internet data"** is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

### To modify the connection profile:



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or



Select "**End call**".

## Making a call

**!** Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted TEL button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

**i** It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Managing contacts / entries



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

**i** The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

**!** Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

**i** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

## Managing quick messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.





Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

**!** Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

## Configuration

### Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

**OK**

**!** The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

**i** The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

**i** Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

### SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**OK**



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

**00.0**

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

**!** Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

**i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated. The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK**


Press "**OK**" to confirm.




Press this button to define the time zone.


## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

 Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.


 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).




Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

## Colour schemes

 As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

## Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	<p>Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.</p>

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	



## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass., Treble., Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).



In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.5.1 (2015-03)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	EN 550 321 A1:2011 EN 550 322 A1:2011 EN 550 323 A1:2011 EN 550 324 A1:2011 EN 550 325 A1:2011
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A12:2009 + A13:2011 + A14:2011 + A15:2011
RoHS	2011/65/EU; 2014/52/EU; 2014/62/EU; 2014/94/EU

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

ATA wireless, S.A.  
Parque Tecnológico de Andalucía  
C/ Severo Ochoa 2  
29550 Campanillas – Málaga  
SPAIN  
Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product (label on top):

# CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

- Specific instructions of installation and proper use of the equipment.

This Multimedia System Equipment must be fixed in a car dashboard.

This Equipment is intended to be installed by service persons or qualified operators in a restricted access location that can only be accessed by using a tool.

The external devices and accessories connected to the equipment shall comply its product standard in order to prevent fire risks.

See characteristics:

MINI AUTO FUSE W Yellow 20:  
Voltage rated: 32V (Volts)  
Current rated: 20A (Amperes)

600	0.30 seconds	0.100 seconds
350	0.080 seconds	0.250 seconds
200	0.15 seconds	5 seconds
135	0.75 seconds	600 seconds
110	100 hours	-
% of rating	Minimum	Maximum
	Blow Time	

- List of countries within the EU or geographical zones where it can be used.

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union:

Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom.

- Information about the license that apply to it.  
There is no specific license.
- Restrictions or possible additional restrictions when trying to achieve the authorization of use of the equipment.  
There is no specific restriction to achieve the authorization of use of the equipment.

# USA – Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

FCC ID: 2EY-R04CE022

## 1. Modification Statement

"Continental Automotive Rambouillet France S.A.S." has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## 2. Interference statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## 3. Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## 4. FCC Class A/B digital device or peripheral notice – Class

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



# CITROËN Connect Radio



## Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	6
Radio	7
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	9
Media	10
Telephone	12
Configuration	18
Frequently asked questions	21

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.  
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.  
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.  
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

\* Depending on equipment.

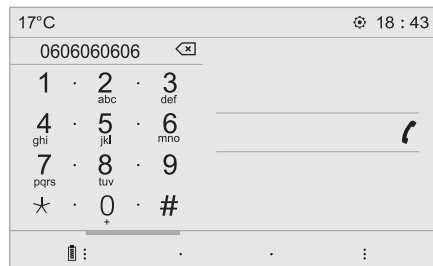
**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB\*/AM\* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth\* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB key.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



**Radio:**

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

**Media:**

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

**Media:**

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

### Steering mounted controls – Type 2




Depending on model.




**Voice commands:**

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

 Increase volume.  
or



 Mute / Restore the sound.  
Or  
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.  
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

or




Decrease volume.





or



**SRC**  **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

or

**SRC**  **Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.  
**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.  
**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

 **Radio** (rotate): previous / next preset.

or



**Media** (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.


**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

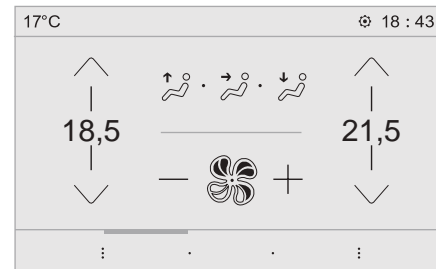
**LIST** **Radio**: display the list of stations.  
**Media**: display the list of tracks.  
**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

## Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

### Air conditioning

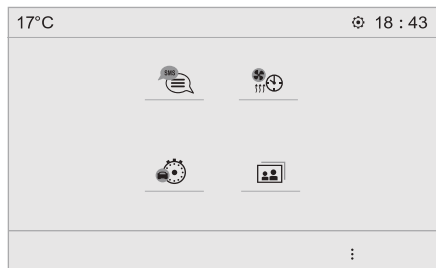
 Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



## Applications



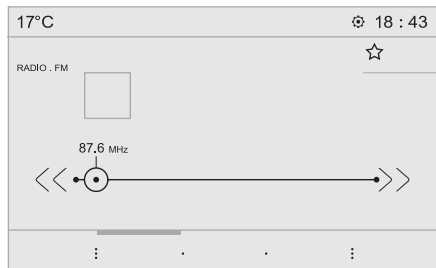
Access configurable equipment.



## Radio Media



Select an audio source or radio station.



## Telephone



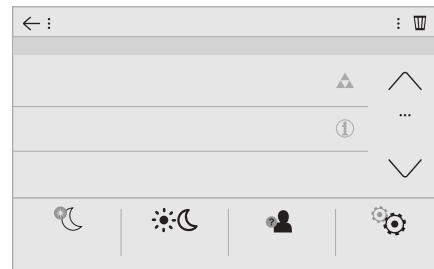
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



## Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



## Driving



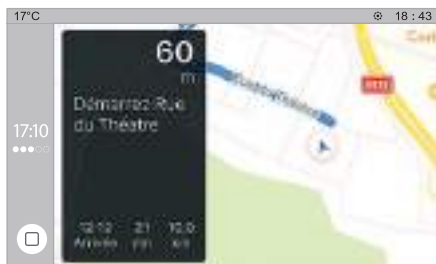
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



## Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



## Applications

### Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

## Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

**MHz**  
**KHz**

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

**!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

### Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

### Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press **"Preset"**.



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

### Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate **"RDS"**.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

**i** The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Display text information

**i** The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Play TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

**i** In the tab "**Tone**", the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources. On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

**!** The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

**i** Onboard audio: the Sound Staging of Arkamys® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception.  
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Waveband"** to select the **"DAB band"**.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## FM-DAB Follow-up

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.  
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate **"FM-DAB Follow-up"**.



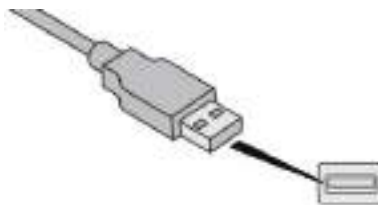
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

**i** If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### Port USB



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.  
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.  
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.  
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.



## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® streaming audio

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

**!** Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is done by the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

- It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

- As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

- The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

- As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

- The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

## Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press Telephone to display the **CarPlay®** interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Smartphone connection Android Auto



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.



The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

## Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

**Telephone connected by Bluetooth®**

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

**Procedure from the telephone**

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

**Procedure from the system**

Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth® function in your telephone.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

### To modify the connection profile:



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.



**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

## Making a call

**!** Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

**i** It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

## Configuration

### Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save.





Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

## Adjust luminosity



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

**!** Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "OK" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

**i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.  
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of picked stations. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list.</p>	<p>Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.</p>
	<p>Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.</p>

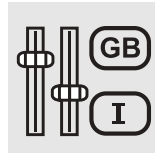
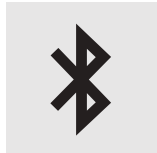
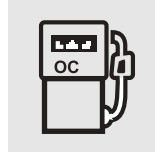
Czech [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH máno profiškú. Je tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základním požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ucla novými směrnice 1999/5/EC.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer hermed, at følgende udgør "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC", ændrer de væsentlige træk og omfatter relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Maksetuleva kirjutab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH spõidava "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavalt direktiivile 1999/5/EÜ põhiolemuse ja nõuetele direktiivi tähtsusele kehtivate rakendatavate sätetega.
English	Herby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΑΛΛΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΔΙΕΥΘΥΝΣΗΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΜΗΤΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Francis [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions prescrites de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiana [Italian]	At to Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara, che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" a conforma ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Lahndi [Latvian]	At šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajiem prasībām un citām ar to saistītajām noteikumiem.
Lietuvi [Lithuanian]	Šiu Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaracija, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hiedy verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta [Maltese]	Idemmers, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jidhergħa li din "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-karatteristiċi essenzjali u ma jipprovdwaxni oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Az alábbi Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozata, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányszabványok elvárásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Ministerstwo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymaganiami oraz pozostałymi istotnymi przepisami dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portugals [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" täyttää direktiivin "1999/5/ET" oleelliset vaatimukset ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukaisesti.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga grundkraven och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Svenska [Swedish]	Här med för Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att på nå "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" är i sammanhang med grundkraven och övriga relevanta bestämmelser i direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer hermed at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.



<p>(concerning the type approval of an electroelectronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)</p>	<p>ECE type approval certificate No. 18 657902</p> <p>emitted frequency range and power</p> <p>Frequency band: Radiated Power [ERP] Hertz / Radiation</p> <p>2402 MHz – 2400 MHz WiFi &lt; 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth = 2.6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 &amp; A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna</p> <p>Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.</p>
<p>Brazil</p>	 <p>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.</p> <p>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS requirements. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:</p> <p>(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and</p> <p>(2) the device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>R= Radio Type Approval Number: <b>RB5R05060606</b></p>
<p>Canada</p>	<p>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS requirements. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:</p> <p>(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and</p> <p>(2) the device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>R= Radio Type Approval Number: <b>RB5R05060606</b></p>
<p>Japan</p>	<p>T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: <b>X JJ-2016/AAA</b> RCR ID: 2C71-2008</p>
<p>Mexico</p>	<p>La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.</p>
<p>South Korea</p>	<p>이 장비는 다음 두 가지 조건에 따라 운용되어야 합니다. 1. 이 장비가 다른 무선 기기에 방해가 되지 않도록 해야 하며, 2. 이 장비가 다른 무선 기기의 방해에 영향을 받지 않도록 해야 합니다.</p>
<p>Taiwan</p>	<p>此設備經核准之使用不得影響其他安全及干擾合法通信；如發現有害干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得重新使用。 此設備必須接受任何干擾，包括可能導致設備誤操作之干擾。</p> <p>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards.</p> <p>Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p>
<p>USA / Canada</p>	<p>Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.</p>



# Bluetooth® audio system



## Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	8
Telephone	11
Frequently asked questions	16

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**!** Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

**i** To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

## First steps



Press: On / Off.  
Rotate: adjust volume.

### SRC /

Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).  
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:  
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.  
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

### LIST

**Radio:**  
Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.  
**Media:**  
Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:  
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

### OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

### 1

Buttons 1 to 6.  
Short press: select the preset radio station.  
Long press: preset a radio station.



**Radio:**  
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.  
**Media:**  
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.  
Scroll in a list.



**Radio:**  
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.  
Select previous / next MP3 folder.  
**Media:**  
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.  
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.  
Go up one level (menu or folder).

### MENU

Access to the main menu.

### TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements).  
Long press: select type of announcement.

### BAND

Selection of FM / DAB / AM wavebands.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



#### Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

#### Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

#### LIST

#### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

#### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



#### SRC /

#### Other than telephone call:

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

#### In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

#### During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

#### OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

### Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Access to the main menu.

#### MENU

Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.



#### Other than telephone call:

#### SRC /

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

#### In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

#### During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

## LIST

### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



### Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

### Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

## Menus

Depending on version.



"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc .



"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

Press the "**MENU**" button.

## MENU

Move from one menu to another.



Enter a menu.

## OK

## Radio

### Selecting a station

Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.



Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.



Press this button to display the list of stations received locally. To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

## LIST

## RDS

**i** The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

**i** If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

**!** The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

## Long procedure

Press the **MENU** button.

**MENU**

Select "**Audio functions**".



Press **OK**.

**OK**

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.



Press **OK**.

**OK**

Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".



Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

**OK**

## Play TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

**!** Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

**TA** Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

## Receiving INFO messages

**i** The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

**TA**

Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.



Select or deselect categories.

**OK**

Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

## Display TEXT INFOS

**i** Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

**OK**

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

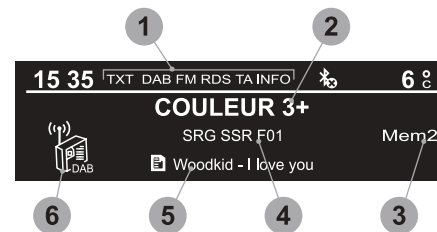


Select **"RadioText (TXT) display"** and confirm **OK** to save.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

**i** If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



- 1 Option display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- 2 Display of the name of the current station.
- 3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.  
Short press: select the preset radio station.  
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- 4 Display the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".
- 5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.
- 6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.



- When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



- Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

## Terrestrial digital radio

- Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

- Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

- Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

- Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA

Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available according to the station).

- When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "OK" to display the contextual menu. (Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

## DAB/FM station tracking

- "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country. When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists). When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

Press the **MENU** button.

**MENU**

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.



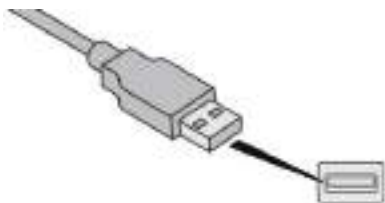
Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.



- If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio, sometimes with a change in volume.

- ! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("DAB/FM" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

## Media USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

**i** When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

### Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal:** the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random:** the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media:** all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

**OK**

Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.



Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

Press this button to confirm.

**OK**

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

### Choosing a track to play

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

### File classification

**LIST**

Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".

Depending on availability and type of device used.

**OK**

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

## Playing files

### LIST

Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

### OK

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "Folder" / "Artist" / "Genre" / "Playlist"\* previous/next in the list.

\* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

## Jack Input AUX (AUX) socket

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

**!** Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

## CD player

Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player. Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

**!** External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

### SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

### LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.

## Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

**!** On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. The folder structure is not observed during playback. All of the files are displayed on a single level.



To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

### LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.  
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).



Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE**. In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen. If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps. It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", or ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard. The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

## Telephone

### Pair a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

## Procedure from the system

Press the **MENU** button.

**MENU**



Select "**Connections**".

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**



Select "**Search for a device**".

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

## Completing the pairing

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted. A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

## Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

**i** Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

## Manage connections

**i** The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming. The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

Press the **MENU** button.

**MENU**



Select "**Connections**".

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Indicates that a device is connected.

**i** A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

**i** When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC /**

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

## Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC /**

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

## Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

**SRC /**

During a call, press one of the buttons for more than two seconds.

**i** The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

**i** With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

## Managing calls

**OK**

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

## End call



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

**OK** Confirm with **OK**.

## Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

## Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases, the combined mode must be activated from the telephone.

## Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

## Consultation call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

## Directory



To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.



Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

Confirm with **OK**.

**OK**

**MENU**

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.





With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

**i** Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

## Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.</p>	<p>Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.</p>
<p>The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.</p>	<p>In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.</p>	<p>Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.</p>

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.</li> </ul>
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system <b>and</b> of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

The device (RDBs Car-Audio from XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD.) complies with following information.

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notices

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Belgium	C. inconnu XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,accapato, se RDBs otrompiti in caracateristiche tecniche in apronte apprestamento a maximum in Belgjcum 1999/5/EC.
Croatian	Ostava XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,oprijelo da je ovaj RDB je u skladu s osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim zahtjevima 1999/5/EC.
Czech	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,druho prohlášení. Je tento RDB je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími přídatnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/EC.
Danish	Underkrævet XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RDB overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EC.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dat het model af RDB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
English	Herewith, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declares that this RDB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga loetakse XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , seadme RDB vastavalt direktiivi 1999/5/EL nõuetele ja muudele oluliselt tehnoloogilise iseloomuga nõuetele.
German	Hiermit erkläre XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dass sich das Gerät RDB in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΣ ΠΡΩΤΗΣ XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , ΔΗΛΩΣΗΣ ΟΤΙ Η ΔΕ ΣΥΜΦΩΝΗΣΗ ΜΕ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΑΝΩΤΕΡΕΣ ΣΥΝΤΕΚΝΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΜΗΛΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Alábbról, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , nyilatkozom, hogy a RDB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető technikai követelményeknek és a 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Italian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dichiara sotto chi RDB rispetta tutte le disposizioni 1999/5/EEY relative ai requisiti e ai requisiti essenziali e ai requisiti tecnici di cui costituisce oggetto.
French	Par la présente XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , déclare que l'appareil RDB est conforme aux exigences essentielles de son secteur d'application, prévues de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Icelandic	Hér með lýtur XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , yfir því að RDB er í samræmi við grundkröfur og aðra kröfur, sem gæta eru tilgreindar 1999/5/EC.
Italian	Con la presente XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dichiara che questo RDB è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Lithuanian	Ar šis XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , deklaru, kad RDB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitus 1999/5/EB direktyvos reikalavimus.
Lithuanian	Šiuo XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , deklaruojame, kad šis RDB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitus 1999/5/EB direktyvos reikalavimus.
Maltese	Hierbilhekk, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , jidher li dan RDB jikkonforma mal-leġiżlazzjoni essenzjali u mal-leġiżlazzjoni oħra rilevanti li hemm f'id-direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Norwegian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , erklærer herved at utstyret RDB er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polish	Wniosekuję wyrazić oraz potwierdzić stosowanie postanowień Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portuguese	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declara que este RDB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outros obrigatórios da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovak	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , týmto vyhlasuje, že RDB spĺňa základné požiadavky a ostatné príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovakian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , izjavlja, da je ta RDB v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declara que RDB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otros disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Swedish	Härmed åtlytar XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , att denna RDB står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga grundkraven och de övriga relevanta bestämmelser som följande av direktiv 1999/5/EC.

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	EN 300 138 v1.9.1 (2015)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011) EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012) EN 55013 (2013) EN 55020 (2007) + A11 (2011)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A12:2011 + AC:2011 + A2:2013

#### Information related to NREO:

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

ATA wrotels, S.A.L.  
Parque Tecnológico de Asturias  
C/ Severo Ochoa 2  
29398 Compostillas - Málaga  
SPAIN  
Notified Body No. 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product:

# CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

O modelo RD6 possui duas versões identificadas pelo Part number do produto:  
• RU-9473: Possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB);  
• RU-9475: Não possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB).



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentares pela Resolução 240/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicáveis.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL - [www.anatel.gov.br](http://www.anatel.gov.br)



DRQ-D-TCY-09-2011-111328-LPD-34236

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – RD6

44028/SDPPV/2015  
5003

OMAN – TRA  
R/3095/16  
D100428

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
DA105282

AGREE PAUL /MRT MARCO

Numero d'agreement : MR 3176 APRIL 2014  
Date d'agreement : 12/04/2014

Car Audio  
RD6  
CLARION

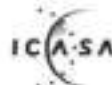
言語

低功率電波輻射電機管理辦法

第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航或影響安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信,指一電信法規定作業之無線電通信;低功率射頻電機需忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



TA-2016/121  
APPROVED



## A

ABS .....	92
Accessories .....	87, 123
Active Safety Brake.....	16, 142-144
AdBlue® .....	20, 30, 172-173
Additive, AdBlue .....	20
Adjusting headlamps .....	83
Adjusting head restraints .....	58
Adjusting seat .....	57-58
Adjusting the air distribution .....	65-68
Adjusting the air flow.....	65-68
Adjusting the date .....	33-35, 43, 36, 20
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel .....	61
Adjusting the temperature .....	65-68
Adjusting the time .....	33-35, 43, 36, 20
Advice on driving .....	118-119
Airbags .....	17, 97, 102
Airbags, curtain .....	98-99
Airbags, front.....	97-99, 102-103
Airbags, lateral.....	98-99
AIRBUMP® .....	175
Air conditioning .....	66
Air conditioning, automatic .....	64, 66-68
Air conditioning, manual .....	64-66
Air intake .....	65-68
Air vents .....	63-64
Alarm.....	54-55
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....	92
Anti-theft .....	120
Armrest, front .....	71, 73
ASR .....	92
Assistance call .....	88-91
Assistance, emergency braking .....	92, 144
Audible warning .....	88
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) .....	27, 11, 10
Auxiliary .....	26-27, 10-11

## B

Battery.....	163, 170, 195-198
Battery, charging.....	197
Battery, remote control .....	48, 50
Blind, panoramic roof.....	70
Blind spot monitoring system.....	148-150
Blind spot sensors .....	23, 148-150
BlueHDI.....	30, 172, 176
Bluetooth (hands-free).....	28-29, 15-16, 11-12
Bluetooth (telephone).....	28-30, 15-17
Bonnet.....	165-166
Boot .....	52, 71, 74
Brake discs.....	171-172
Brake lamps .....	187
Brakes .....	13, 171-172
Braking, automatic emergency .....	16, 142-144
Braking, dynamic emergency .....	125
Brightness.....	19
Bulbs .....	184
Bulbs (changing) .....	184, 187

## C

Cable, audio.....	26, 10
Cable, jack .....	26, 10
Capacity, fuel tank .....	158-159
Cap, fuel filler .....	158-159
CarPlay connection.....	18, 13
CD .....	26-27, 11, 9
CD, MP3.....	26-27, 11, 9-10
Central locking .....	46-47, 52
Changing a bulb .....	184, 187-188
Changing a fuse .....	189-193
Changing a wheel .....	179-181
Changing a wiper blade .....	85, 164
Changing the remote control battery .....	50
Checking the engine oil level.....	29
Checking the levels.....	168-170
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) .....	176-178
Checks .....	167, 170-172

Checks, routine .....	170-172
Child lock.....	116-117
Children.....	107, 109-111, 113
Children (safety).....	116
Child seats .....	96, 100-101, 106-107, 115
Child seats, conventional.....	106-107
Child seats, i-Size .....	113
Child seats, ISOFIX .....	109-111, 113
CITROËN Connect Nav.....	1
CITROËN Connect Radio.....	1
Closing the boot.....	45, 52
Closing the doors.....	45-47, 51
Coat hanger .....	73
Configuration, vehicle.....	33-38
Connection, Bluetooth .....	21-22, 28-30, 15-17, 12
Connection, MirrorLink .....	19, 12-14
Connection, Wi-Fi network .....	22
Control, electric windows.....	55-56
Control, emergency boot release .....	52
Control, emergency door .....	49
Control, heated seats.....	59
Control stalk, lighting .....	24-25, 77, 80
Control stalk, wipers .....	84, 86
Courtesy lamp .....	70, 188
Cover, load space .....	75
Cruise control.....	136, 139-141
Cruise control by speed limit recognition .....	136
Cup holder.....	71

## D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio.....	25, 9, 6-7
Date (setting).....	33-35, 43, 36, 20
Daytime running lamps .....	77, 80, 184-185
Daytime running lamps, LED.....	185
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....	97-98, 102-103
Deadlocking.....	45, 48

Defrosting.....	69
Defrosting, front.....	69
Demisting, front.....	69
Dimensions.....	204
Dipstick.....	29, 168-169
Direction indicators.....	79-80, 184-185, 187
Display screen, instrument panel.....	129
Distance alert ~ Collision Risk Alert.....	143
Doors.....	51
Driver's attention warning.....	146
Driving time warning.....	145-146
DSC.....	92
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....	17, 92-93

## E

Earth point, remote.....	167
EBA.....	92
EBFD.....	92
Economy mode.....	163
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....	92
Emergency call.....	88-91
Emergency switching off.....	124
Emergency warning lamps.....	75, 88
Energy economy mode.....	163
Engine compartment.....	167
Engine, Diesel.....	160, 176
Engine, petrol.....	160, 167
Engines.....	201-203
Environment.....	48
ESC/ASR.....	92

## F

Fatigue detection.....	145-146
Filling the fuel tank.....	158-160
Filter, air.....	171
Filter, Diesel fuel.....	167

Filter, oil.....	171
Filter, particle.....	170-171
Filter, passenger compartment.....	171
Fitting a wheel.....	181-183
Fitting roof bars.....	164-165
Fittings, boot.....	74-75
Fittings, interior.....	71-72
Flap, fuel filler.....	158-159
Flashing indicators.....	24, 79-80, 185
Foglamp, rear.....	23, 78
Foglamps, front.....	24, 78, 184, 186
Foglamps, rear.....	78
Folding the rear seats.....	60-61
Frequency (radio).....	24-25
Fuel.....	160
Fuel tank.....	159
Fusebox, engine compartment.....	193
Fuses.....	189-193

## G

Gauge, fuel.....	158-159
Gearbox, automatic.....	126-133, 171
Gearbox, manual.....	71, 125, 130-133, 171
Gear lever, manual gearbox.....	125
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator.....	129
Glove box.....	71-72
G.P.S.....	14

## H

Hazard warning lamps.....	75, 88
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation.....	88
Headlamps, automatic dipping.....	25, 82-83
Headlamps, automatic illumination.....	77, 79-81
Headlamps, dipped beam.....	25, 77, 184-185
Headlamps, halogen.....	184
Headlamps, main beam.....	25, 77, 184-186

Head restraints, front.....	58
Head restraints, rear.....	60-61
Heating.....	65-66
Hill start assist.....	130
Hooks.....	74
Horn.....	88

## I

Ignition.....	68, 122-123, 31
Ignition on.....	123
Immobiliser, electronic.....	48, 120
Indicator, AdBlue® range.....	30
Indicator, coolant temperature.....	26
Indicator, engine oil level.....	29
Indicator lamps, operation.....	12
Indicators, direction.....	79, 185
Inflating tyres.....	205
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit).....	176-178
Instrument panel.....	8-11
Internet browser.....	18
ISOFIX.....	110
Isofix mountings.....	109

## J

Jack.....	72, 179-181, 26, 10
Jump starting.....	196

## K

Key.....	44, 46-49
Key, electronic.....	46-47
Keyless Entry and Starting.....	46-48, 120, 122-123
Key not recognised.....	124
Key with remote control.....	120

Kit, hands-free ..... 28-29, 15-16, 11-12  
 Kit, temporary puncture repair ..... 74, 176-178

**L**

Labels, identification ..... 205  
 Lamp, boot ..... 71, 188  
 Lamps, parking ..... 80  
 Lane Departure Warning  
     System (LDWS) ..... 147-148  
 LEDs – Light-emitting diodes ..... 80, 184  
 Level, brake fluid ..... 169  
 Level, Diesel additive ..... 170  
 Level, engine coolant ..... 26, 169-170  
 Level, engine oil ..... 29, 168-169  
 Levels and checks ..... 167-170  
 Level, screenwash fluid ..... 85, 170  
 Light-emitting diodes – LEDs ..... 80, 184, 188  
 Lighting, guide-me home ..... 81  
 Lighting, interior ..... 70  
 Lighting, welcome ..... 81  
 Load reduction mode ..... 163  
 Locating your vehicle ..... 45  
 Locking ..... 45, 48  
 Locking from the inside ..... 52  
 Low fuel level ..... 158-159

**M**

Maintenance (advice) ..... 175  
 Map reading lamps ..... 70  
 Markings, identification ..... 205  
 Mat ..... 71, 73  
 Menu ..... 13  
 Menu, main ..... 4  
 Menus (audio) ..... 4-5, 4-6  
 Messages ..... 32  
 Messages, quick ..... 32

Mirror, rear view ..... 63  
 Mirrors, door ..... 62, 148-150  
 Misfuel prevention ..... 159  
 Mountings, Isofix ..... 109  
 MP3 CD ..... 10

**N**

Number plate lamps ..... 188

**O**

Oil change ..... 168-169  
 Oil consumption ..... 168-169  
 Oil, engine ..... 168-169  
 Opening the bonnet ..... 165-166  
 Opening the boot ..... 45-46, 52  
 Opening the doors ..... 45-46, 51

**P**

Pads, brake ..... 171-172  
 Paint ..... 205  
 Paint colour code ..... 205  
 Panoramic glass sunroof ..... 70  
 Parcel shelf, rear ..... 74-75  
 Parking brake ..... 13, 125, 171-172  
 Parking brake, electric ..... 125  
 Parking sensors, rear ..... 150-151  
 Plates, identification ..... 205  
 Player, Apple® ..... 27, 11, 10  
 Player, MP3 CD ..... 26, 9-10  
 Player, USB ..... 26, 10, 8  
 Port, USB ..... 71-72, 26, 10, 8  
 Pre-heater, Diesel ..... 23  
 Pressures, tyres ..... 179, 205  
 Pre-tensioning seat belts ..... 96  
 Priming the fuel system ..... 176

**R**

Profiles ..... 34, 18  
 Protecting children ..... 97-98, 100-103, 107,  
     109-111, 113  
 Protectors ..... 175  
 Puncture ..... 176-178

Radio ..... 23-24, 27, 7, 11, 4-6  
 Radio, digital (Digital Audio  
     Broadcasting – DAB) ..... 25, 9, 6  
 Range, AdBlue ..... 30-31  
 RDS ..... 24-25, 7  
 Rear screen, demisting ..... 69  
 Recharging the battery ..... 197  
 Recirculation, air ..... 65-68  
 Reduction of electrical load ..... 163  
 Regeneration of the particle filter ..... 171  
 Reinitialisation of the under-  
     inflation detection system ..... 153-154  
 Reinitialising the remote control ..... 50  
 Reminder, key in ignition ..... 122  
 Reminder, lighting on ..... 78-79  
 Remote control ..... 44-48  
 Removing a wheel ..... 181-183  
 Removing the mat ..... 73  
 Replacing bulbs ..... 184, 187  
 Replacing fuses ..... 189-192  
 Replacing the air filter ..... 171  
 Replacing the oil filter ..... 171  
 Replacing the passenger  
     compartment filter ..... 171  
 Reservoir, screenwash ..... 170  
 Resetting the service indicator ..... 29  
 Resetting the trip recorder ..... 32  
 Reversing camera ..... 152  
 Roof bars ..... 164-165  
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) ..... 176

## S

Safety, children .....	97-98, 100-103, 107, 109-111, 113
Screen menu map.....	13
Screen, monochrome .....	33-35
Screen, multifunction (with audio system).....	4
Screenwash, front.....	85
Screenwash, rear.....	84
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction).....	172
SCR system .....	172
Seat belts .....	94-96, 106
Seats, front.....	57
Seats, heated.....	59
Seats, rear.....	60-61
Selector, gear.....	126-128
Serial number, vehicle .....	205
Service indicator .....	27, 29
Servicing .....	27
Settings, equipment.....	33-38
Settings, system.....	35, 19
Sidelamps .....	77, 80, 184-185, 187
Side repeater .....	186
Snow chains.....	153, 161
Socket, 12 V accessory .....	71-72
Socket, auxiliary.....	26, 10, 9
Socket, JACK .....	72, 26, 10, 9
Sockets, audio .....	72
Speed limiter .....	136-139
Speed limit recognition .....	133-135
Stability control (ESC).....	92
Starting a Diesel engine .....	160
Starting the engine .....	120
Starting the vehicle .....	118, 120-123, 126-128
Starting using another battery .....	124, 196
Station, radio .....	23-25, 7, 4
Stay, bonnet.....	165-166
Steering mounted controls, audio .....	3, 3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment .....	61
Stop .....	13
Stopping the vehicle .....	118, 120-123, 126-128
Stop & Start.....	24, 41, 65, 69, 131-133, 159, 165, 170, 198

Stop (warning lamp).....	13
Storage.....	72
Sun visor .....	71
Switching off the engine .....	120
Synchronising the remote control.....	50

## T

Tables of fuses .....	189-193
Tank, fuel.....	158-159
Telephone .....	28-33, 15-18, 11-14
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition.....	15
Temperature, coolant.....	26
Third brake lamp .....	187
Three flashes (direction indicators) .....	79
Time (setting) .....	33-35, 43, 36, 20
TMC (Traffic info).....	14
Tools.....	179-181
Total distance recorder.....	32
Touch screen.....	35-38, 1, 1
Touch screen tablet .....	35-38
Towbar.....	119, 162
Towed loads .....	201
Towing another vehicle .....	199-200
Towing eye .....	74
Traction control (ASR) .....	17, 92-93
Traffic information (TA) .....	5
Traffic information (TMC).....	14
Trailer .....	119, 162
Triangle, warning.....	74-75
Trip computer .....	40-41
Trip distance recorder.....	32
Tyres.....	205
Tyre under-inflation detection .....	16, 152, 179

## U

Under floor storage.....	74
Under-inflation (detection) .....	152
Unlocking .....	45-46
Unlocking from the inside .....	52
Updating the date.....	43, 36, 20
Updating the time.....	43, 36, 20
USB .....	26-27, 10-11, 8

## V

Ventilation .....	63-66
Voice commands .....	5-10

## W

Warning and indicator lamps .....	12
Warning lamp, braking system .....	13
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater .....	23
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened .....	94-95
Warning lamp, low fuel level.....	18
Warning lamps .....	12
Warning lamp, seat belts .....	94-95
Warning lamp, Service.....	22
Warning lamp, Stop .....	13
Weights .....	201-203
Wheel, spare.....	179-181, 205
Window controls .....	55-56
Wiper blades (changing).....	85, 164
Wiper, rear.....	84
Wipers .....	84, 86
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....	84, 86





Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU  
Anglais

03-17

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



